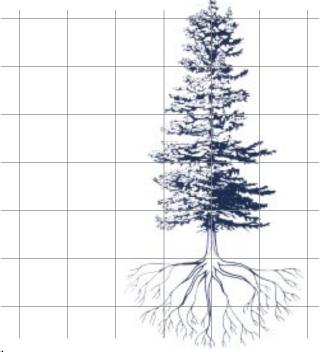
Field Manual for Describing Terrestrial Ecosystems

Land Management Handbook NUMBER 25
ISSN 0229-1622
1998





B.C. Ministry of Environment, Lands, and Parks B.C. Ministry of Forests

Field Manual for Describing Terrestrial Ecosystems



B.C. Ministry of Environment, Lands, and Parks B.C. Ministry of Forests

1998

Canadian Cataloguing in Publication Data

Main entry under title: Field manual for describing terrestrial ecosystems

(Land management handbook, ISSN 0229-1622; 25)

Co-published by B.C. Ministry of Forests and B.C. Ministry of Environment, Lands and Parks. ISBN 0-7726-3604-4

1. Ecological surveys - Handbooks, manuals, etc. 2. Ecological surveys - British Columbia - Handbooks, manuals, etc. 3. Forest surveys - British Columbia - Handbooks, manuals, etc. 4. Forest site quality - British Columbia - Handbooks, manuals, etc. I. British Columbia. Ministry of Environment, Lands and Parks. II. British Columbia. Ministry of Forests. III. Series.

QH541.15.S95F53 1998 577'.09711 C98-960184-6

©1998 Province of British Columbia

B.C. Ministry of Environment, Lands and Parks and Research Branch B.C. Ministry of Forests 712 Yates Street Victoria, B.C. V8W 9C2

Co-Published by the Resources Inventory Branch

Copies of this and other MInistry of Forests titles are available from Crown Publications Inc., 546 Yates Street, Victoria, B.C. V8W 1K8.

Preface

How to use this manual

This manual has been prepared to assist field surveyors in the completion of the Ecosystem Field Forms, including site, soil, vegetation, mensuration, wildlife habitat assessment, tree attributes for wildlife, and coarse woody debris data forms. These are a series of forms for the collection of ecological data in British Columbia.

The field manual is organized by section—one for each data form. The forms, as a package, are called Ecosystem Field Forms (FS882) and are numbered as follows:

Site Description FS882(1)	SITE
Soil Description FS882(2)	SOIL
Vegetation FS882(3)	VEG
Mensuration FS882(4)	MENS
Wildlife Habitat Assessment FS882(5)	WHA
Tree Attributes for Wildlife FS882(6)	TAW
Coarse Woody Debris FS882(7)	CWD
References	REF
Ground Inspection (included as an insert)	GIF

The forms are designed to be used in various inventories, e.g., ecosystem classification, terrestrial ecosystem mapping, and wildlife habitat assessment. Not all the data fields on all the forms will be completed on every sample plot. Rather, project objectives will determine which forms and fields need to be completed. Likewise, project objectives will determine where and how plots are located.

The field manual follows *Describing Ecosystems in the Field* (Luttmerding et al. 1990), however, it has been updated to accommodate new inventory requirements and standards. The forms evolved from the B.C. Ministry of Forests Ecological Classification Reconnaissance Form, the larger more detailed forms in Luttmerding et al. (1990), and the Vegetation Resource Inventory forms (Resources Inventory Committee 1997).

The size of sample plots has not been identified in this field manual. In most cases, a plot size of $400~\rm m^2$ is considered adequate, however, in species-poor ecosystems, the plot size could be smaller (e.g., some wetlands, grasslands, dense forests). Plot shape can be rectangular, square, or circular, but is usually consistent for a project. As this is a field manual, the descriptions have been kept as brief as possible. Other supporting references, such as Luttmerding et al. (1990), Green et al. (1993), Howes and Kenk (1997), and Agriculture Canada Expert Committee on Soil Survey (1998), among others, will be required if the user is not already familiar with their contents. See references (Section 8) for a complete list of complementary documents.

Acknowledgements

This field manual was compiled and edited from material from many sources. As such, there are no easily identifiable authors. Most of the compilation and editing work was completed by Del Meidinger, Rick Trowbridge, Anne Macadam, and Calvin Tolkamp. However, many others kindly contributed their time and current information, including: John Parminter, Bob Maxwell, Scott Smith, Charles Tarnocai, and Will Mackenzie. Assistance in editing various versions was provided by Ted Lea, Barb von Sacken, Carmen Cadrin, Larry Lacelle, Tina Lee and Arman Mirza. Greg Britton contributed valuable suggestions concerning data formats and codes.

Contributors to other documents and forms also assisted with this field manual by their work on classifications, procedures, diagrams, figures, tables, or design. All the manuals, reports, and publications used to prepare this field manual are listed in the References section. The authors, compilers, and contributors to these primary sources of information are gratefully acknowledged. Their unselfish work has made this field guide possible.

Many others contributed to the production of the field guide. Louise Gronmyr and Christina Stewart typed the original material from *Describing Ecosystems in the Field.* Anette Thingsted assisted with an earlier draft. Susan Bannerman prepared an extremely useful English and format edit. Tetrad Creative Services and Greg Britton prepared the camera-ready version.

The compilers of this field manual greatly appreciate everyone's contributions.

Financial assistance for preparing this guide has been provided by the B.C. Ministry of Forests, B.C. Ministry of Environment, Lands, and Parks, and particularly, Forest Renewal B.C.



1 SITE DESCRIPTION

Contents

		Page
Site I	Description Form	3
Field	Procedure	4
	oleting the Form	5
1.	Date	5
2.	Plot Number	5
3.	Project ID	5
4.	Field Number	5
5.	Surveyor(s)	6
6.	General Location	6
7.	Forest Region	6
8.	Map Sheet	6
9.	UTM Zone	6
10.	Latitude/Longitude or Northing/Easting	6
11.	Air Photo Number	7
12.	X/Y Co-ordinates	7
13.	Map Unit	7
14.	Site Diagram	7
15.	Plot Representing	8
16.	Biogeoclimatic Unit	8
17.	Site Series	8
18.	Transition/Distribution Codes	8
19.	Ecosection	9
20.	Moisture Regime	9
21.	Nutrient Regime	11
22.	Successional Status	11
23.	Structural Stage	16
24.	Realm/Class	19
25.	Site Disturbance	22
26.	Photo Roll and Frame Numbers	25
27.	Elevation	25
28.	Slope	25
29.	•	25
30.	Mesoslope Position	25
31.	Surface Topography	26

		Page
32.	Exposure Type	27
	Surface Substrate	29
	Notes	30
Арре	endices	
1.1	Biogeoclimatic Units of British Columbia	31
1.2	Ecosections of British Columbia	38
Table	es	
1.1	Soil moisture regime classes	10
1.2	Nutrient regime classes and relationships between	
	regime and site properties	12
Figu	res	
1.1	Examples of site diagrams	7
1.2	Stand structure modifiers	20
1.3	Mesoslope position	26

<i>-</i> 4	ECO\$	ECOSYSTEM FIELD FORM	PLOT NO. (2)	
<u> Ā</u> Ō	BRITISH MINISTRY OLUMBIA BCENVIR	MINISTRY OF FORESTS ID. (3)	FIELD NO.	SURVEYOR(S) 5
		LOCATION	SITE	SITE DIAGRAM
	GENERAL (6)			
	FOREST (7) MAI	MAPSHEET (8) UTM (9) LAT, (10) LONG./		(14)
NO	AIRPHOTO (11)	X CO-ORD (12) Y CO-ORD. MAP (13)		
ΙŢ		SITE INFORMATION		
ЯІР	PLOT REPRESENTING	(9)		
S	BGC UNIT	STE (7) TRANS./ (18) ECOSECTION (19)	ı	
DE	MOISTURE 20	NUTRIENT (21) SUCCESS. (22) STRUCT. (23) REALW (24) REGIME (24) STATUS (25) STRUGE (25) CLASS (24)	SITE 25	PHOTO 26
3TI	ELEV. (27) m.	SLOPE (28) % ASPECT (29) O MESO SLOPE (30) TOPOG. (31)	EXPOS. 32) FRAME NOS.
S		NOTES	SUBS	SUBSTRATE (%)
			ORG. MATTER	ROCKS
		(34)	DEC. WOOD	(33) MINERAL SOIL
			BEDROCK	WATER
Č	7,000 1101 (1) 0000			

FS882 (1) HRE 98/5

Field Procedure

Getting Started

- Record the date, project ID, field number, surveyor(s) name(s), general location, forest region, and ecosection. Copy the plot number to other forms.
- If air photos are available, record flight line and photo numbers at this time. If GPS co-ordinates are available, record latitude and longitude.
- 3. Establish the location of plot boundaries.

Measure and Assess

- 1. Determine the elevation, slope, and aspect.
- Traverse the entire plot systematically, observing the position of the plot relative to the surrounding landscape, microtopographic features, and the composition of surface substrates. Record mesoslope position, surface topography and percentage of substrate classes.
- 3. Note any evidence of site disturbance.
- Assess successional status and structural stage based on site factors and vegetation.
- 5. Integrate site, soil, and vegetation factors to determine moisture and nutrient regime and biogeoclimatic unit.
- Based on the foregoing assessments, determine site series. If the site is complex, estimate and record the proportion of the plot represented by each site series and determine the transition/distribution code.
- 7. If applicable, enter exposure type and realm/class.
- 8. Sketch a plot diagram.
- 9. Enter a brief description of key site features under Item 15, "Plot Representing."
- Check that all the required form information has been collected. Strike through any fields that were not assessed.

Later in the Office

 Locate the plot on a 1:20 000 map (or other scale), and record the map sheet number. If latitude and longitude were not entered in the field, determine the UTM zone and co-ordinates from the map.

- 2. Compare elevation recorded in the field with that indicated on a topographic map, and adjust if appropriate.
- 3. Locate the plot on an air photo and determine *X* and *Y* co-ordinates.
- 4. Check again that all the required information has been collected and noted on the form.

Refer to the following guides for more information:

- Ministry of Forests (MOF) regional field guides to site identification and interprepation
- Describing Ecosystems in the Field (DEIF) manual (Luttmerding et al. 1990)

Completing the Form

Numbered items below refer to circled numbers on the ecosystem field form shown at the beginning of this section. A recommended sequence for completing the form is described under "Field Procedure."

1. Date

Enter two-digit codes for year, month, and day.

2. Plot Number

This is the number printed in red in the top right corner of form. It provides a unique plot identifier for data management purposes. Record this number on all other forms completed for the plot.

3. Project ID

Enter a descriptor that connotes the type of project and provides information about the subject or location of the project. For example:

- ecosystem mapping projects: TEM_BeaverCove
- species inventory: SPP_Woss
- site series classification: BEC_SBSwk1
- wildlife habitat inventory: WHI_grizzly
- site index: SIBEC_Morice

4. Field Number

Use up to eight characters to further identify the plot according to the needs of the specific project.

5. Surveyor(s)

Record the first initial and last name of each person involved in describing the site.

6. General Location

Describe the location of the plot relative to natural features such as mountains or bodies of water and permanent structures such as kilometre signs on main roads.

- Select points of reference that are unlikely to change and are named on maps or are otherwise easily identified.
- Include compass bearings and distances (measured or estimated), where possible.
- More detailed access information may be recorded under Item 34, "Notes."

7. Forest Region

This information can be useful for sorting plot data. Use the following codes:

CAR = Cariboo KAM = Kamloops

NEL = Nelson

PG = Prince George PR = Prince Rupert VAN = Vancouver

8. Map Sheet

Use the B.C. Geographic System to identify the map sheet on which the plot is located (e.g., 93H015). The preferred map scale is 1:20,000.

9. UTM Zone

If using the UTM system to indicate precise plot location, enter the UTM zone number indicated on the map sheet (8–11 within British Columbia). The present standard for UTM data is NAD83. Most new maps follow this standard. Older maps, and some new maps use NAD27 which will cause significant location errors if it is mistaken for NAD83.

10. Latitude/Longitude or Northing/Easting

Determine the precise location of plot using the best available topographic base map. Latitude and longitude may also be determined using GPS. While either system may be used, the UTM system is recommended if coordinates are determined from a map.

- For latitude and longitude, note degrees (°), minutes ('), and seconds (").
- For UTM system, record northing and easting (NAD83).

11. Air Photo Number

Record the flight line and air photo number.

12. X/Y Co-ordinates

Using a plastic air photo grid overlay (2M-79), record values of X and Y co-ordinates for the intersecting lines closest to the plot location. Place the grid over the photograph with photo number viewed upright and the origin of grid axes aligned with the lower left-hand corner. Be sure to align centre and feducial points (points at corners or centre of each side of photograph).

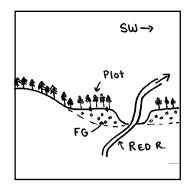
13. Map Unit

If the plot is part of a mapping project, enter coding for the terrestrial ecosystem (TEM) or other map unit (eg., soils, terrain, etc.). TEM unit coding is as follows:

Site series	Site modifier	Structural stage
SS	mm	#xx

14. Site Diagram

A cross-sectional diagram of plot location in relation to the surrounding landscape is often most useful. Use the diagram to provide additional information about site features or to assist in locating the plot again. Stand structure, mesoslope position, physical features of the surrounding landscape, and plot location relative to identifiable landmarks such as bodies of water or roads can be depicted (Figure 1.1).



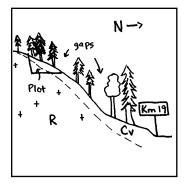


FIGURE 1.1 Examples of site diagrams.

15. Plot Representing

Briefly characterize the site. If the plot was not selected randomly or systematically, describe the key attributes for which it was chosen. For example:

- · Open Pl stand; kinnikinnick, lichens on FG terrace
- · Young highly productive Fd stand on zonal site
- · Sxw- horsetail-ladyfern, Hydromor, Humic Gleysol, on floodplain

16. Biogeoclimatic Unit

Enter a code for the biogeoclimatic zone and subzone. Include variant and phase where applicable. Ministry of Forests maps and regional field guides to site identification and interpretation are the best sources of information. A current listing of codes is given in Appendix 1.1.

In areas distinctly transitional between two recognized biogeoclimatic
units, enter the code for the dominant unit here and mark with an
asterisk (*). Identify other unit and explain under "Notes" (Item 34).

17. Site Series

Enter a two-digit site series code and a letter code for site series phases, where recognized, from the appropriate MOF regional field guide to site identification and interpretation. Note the following special cases:

- If two or more distinct site series are present, list in order of predominance, followed by the proportion of the plot represented by each in percent. For example: 01a (70%), 05 (30%).
- Where site characteristics are uniform, but distinctly transitional between two recognized site series, indicate with a dash (e.g., 01a-05).
- If the ecosystem does not resemble a recognized site series, leave this field blank, and explain under "Notes".

18. Transition / Distribution Codes

For descriptions of complex sites in projects involving systematic or random sampling, enter a one-digit code indicating the proportional distribution of site series within the plot and the presence of transitional site series.

Mostly homogeneous plots (codes 1-3):

SS1

A simple homogeneous plot with > 98% of area classified as a single site series (SS1).

SS1(SS2)

2 A homogeneous plot with > 90% of the area classified as SS1; however, site characteristics are grading slightly toward SS2. Less than 10% of the area is distinctly SS2.



3 A homogeneous plot, but classification is intermediate between SS1 and SS2.

Transitional from one edge of the plot to the other (code 4):



4 Gradual transition from SS1 at one edge of plot to SS2 at other edge, or from SS2 to SS3, with SS1 being the modal site series. In the latter case, SS1 usually represents > 50% of plot.

Two or more distinct site series present (codes 5-8):



5 Two or more distinct site series present, with SS1 representing ≥ 70% of plot area.



6 Two or more distinct site series, with SS1 representing 40–69% of plot area.



7 Two distinct areas in the plot: SS1 represents ≥ 50% of area, and remainder is intermediate between SS2 and SS3.



8 Two distinct areas in the plot: ≥ 50% is intermediate between SS1 and SS2, and remainder is SS3.

19. Ecosection

Enter a three-letter code for the ecosection. See Appendix 1.2 for a current listing of codes.

20. Moisture Regime

Enter a code (0–8) for moisture regime. Base the assessment on environmental factors, soil properties, and indicator plants relative to other sites within same biogeoclimatic unit. Classes are listed with brief descriptions in Table 1.1. Note the following special cases:

- If two or more areas of the plot have a distinctly different moisture regime, enter codes for the dominant and largest sub-dominant class, with the sub-dominant class in parentheses (e.g., 4 (5)).
- If a wide range of moisture regimes is present, list the dominant and sub-dominant class, followed by the range (e.g. 4 (5), 4-6).
- Where moisture regime is distinctly transitional between two classes, indicate with "+" or "-" (e.g., 4+).

Code	Class	Description	Primary water source		
0	Very xeric	Water removed extremely rapidly in relation to supply; soil is moist for a negligible time after precipitation	precipitation		
1	Xeric	Water removed very rapidly in relation to supply; soil is moist for brief periods following precipitation	precipitation		
2	Subxeric	Water removed rapidly in relation to supply; soil is moist for short periods following precipitation	precipitation		
3	Submesic	Water removed readily in relation to supply; water available for moderately short periods following precipitation	precipitation		
4	Mesic	Water removed somewhat slowly in relation to supply; soil may remain moist for a significant, but sometimes short period of the year. Available soil moisture reflects climatic inputs	precipitation in moderate to fine-textured soils and limited seepage in coarse- textured soils		
5	Subhygric	Water removed slowly enough to keep soil wet for a significant part of growing season; some temporary seepage and possibly mottling below 20 cm	precipitation and seepage		

Code	Class	Description	Primary water source
6	Hygric	Water removed slowly enough to keep soil wet for most of growing season; permanent seepage and mottling; gleyed colours common	seepage
7	Subhydric	Water removed slowly enough to keep water table at or near surface for most of year; gleyed mineral or organic soils; permanent seepage < 30 cm below surface	seepage or permanent water table
8	Hydric	Water removed so slowly that water table is at or above soil surface all year; gleyed mineral or organic soils	permanent water table

^a More detailed descriptions and keys are given in the DEIF manual (Luttmerding et al. 1990) and in MOF field guides to site identification and interpretation.

21. Nutrient Regime

Enter a code (A–F) for nutrient regime, indicating the available nutrient supply relative to other sites within the same biogeoclimatic unit. Base the assessment on a combination of environmental factors, soil properties, and indicator plants. Features that are strongly expressed may compensate for other factors to create richer or poorer conditions. Classes are listed with some criteria in Table 1.2.

- If two or more areas of plot have a distinctly different nutrient regime, enter the code for the dominant class, and give the range (e.g., C, B-C).
- Where the nutrient regime is distinctly transitional between two classes, enter closest class followed by an asterisk and explain under "Notes" (e.g. C*).

22. Successional Status

Enter the two or three-character uppercase code for successional status. Apply these codes where forest succession is expected to occur. Under extreme conditions, stand age may vary from the age ranges suggested here.

TABLE 1.2. Nutrient regime classes and relationships between nutrient regime and site properties

		Submesotrophic	Mesotrophic	Permesotrophic	Eutrophic	Hypereutrophic
	A	В	С	D	Е	F
	Very poor	Poor	Medium	Rich	Very rich	Saline
Available	very low	low	average	plentiful	abundant	excess salt
nutrients						accum.
Humus		Mor	1	1		
form				Moder		
					Mull	
	Ae hoi	rizon present				
A horizon			A horizo	n absent		
				Ah horize	on present	
Organic	low (li	ght coloured)				1
matter		medi	um (inter. in c	olour)		
content				high (dark co	loured)	
		high				1
C:N Ratio			modera	te		
			modera		l w	
						1
Soil depth	extremely	shallow				
Son depth			very sh	 allow to deep		
						1
Soil texture	coar	se textured				
			medium	to fine textur	ad	
			Incuran	lo mic textur		ł
% Coarse	hi	gh	1			
fragments			mod	erate to low		
			lliou	erate to low		j
Parent	base	-low				
material			base-medium	i		
mineralogy				base	high	
	extremely -	- mod. acid				1
Soil pH	, and the second	moder	ately acid – n	 eutral		
_					– mildly alk.	
Water pH						1
(wetlands)	< 4–5	4.5-5.5	5.5-6.5	6.5-7.4	7.4+	
Seepage			tomporer		normonent	1
seepage			temporary		permanent	

NV = Non-Vegetated:

Vegetation is either *absent* or *less than five percent cover* because of recent severe disturbances such as fire, mass-wasting, or flooding.

PS = Pioneer Seral:

Stage where vegetation occupies a site following the elimination of the original plant cover by a disturbance such as fire, logging, or scalping of the soil surface.

 May also be an early stage of development on talus slopes or erosion scars.

YS = Young Seral:

Young stands of early seral species or communities where selfthinning has not yet occurred.

- Generally young even-aged stands (usually < 60 years old) with an even canopy height.
- Includes dense stagnated pine stands, which may be up to 100 years old.

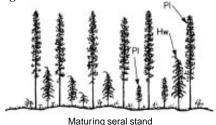


Young seral stand

MS = **Maturing Seral**:

Mid-seral stands of mature age (generally 60–140 years old) that have gone through an initial natural thinning due to species interactions.

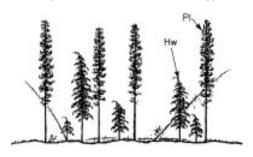
 One age class in the overstorey and regeneration in a much younger age class, composed of same species, and/or climax species, and/or species with greater shade tolerance.



OS = **Overmature Seral**:

Stands dominated by the original overstorey species at a "decadent" age (usually > 140 years old).

- · Tree species in the main upper canopy are dying.
- Typically a secondary tree canopy consisting of same species or a more shade-tolerant species; some individuals belonging to second generation may have entered the main canopy.

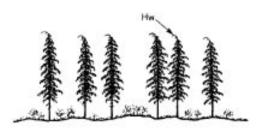


Overmature seral stand

YC = Young Climax:

Stand is composed of species in proportions typical of the climax expected for the site, but the community structure expected at climax has not developed.

 Differs from climax stage in being even-aged and young (< 80 years old), and having a uniform canopy height.



Young climax stand

YCC = Young Climatic Climax:

Young stands (< 80 years old) on zonal sites, composed of the same species expected in climatic climax stands; differ from MCC stands in having a stand structure that is more or less even-aged and of uniform height class.

YEC = Young Edaphic Climax:

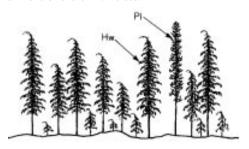
Young stands (usually < 80 years old) composed of the same species expected at climax on a site edaphically different from a "zonal" site.

- Differs in stand structure from the MEC in being more or less even-aged and of uniform height class.
- Examples include a young spruce stand on a wet site, or a young Douglas-fir stand on a dry, south-facing slope.

MC = **Maturing Climax**:

Stands composed of species expected to be present in the climax stand; stand has undergone natural thinning, gaps have been created, and a structure similar to that expected at climax has developed.

- Differs from the YC in having a better-developed understorey and a
 more or less continuous age and height class distribution, although a gap may exist between the older or upper class and the
 next class.
- Some remnants of the earlier stand may remain, but they should not have any effect on the density or structure of the stand. Removal of a tree would not cause a significant response in the growth or establishment of the climax trees.



Maturing climax stand

MCC = Maturing Climatic Climax:

Stands on zonal sites composed of the species representative of the climatic climax, and approaching a continuous age and height class distribution.

- There may be a gap between the main canopy and the continuous age and height class distribution of the regeneration.
- Stands are at least 80-120 years old, but usually much older.

MEC = Maturing Edaphic Climax:

Differs from MCC stands in species composition and site conditions (occurs on azonal sites); soil properties differ primarily in terms of soil moisture and nutrient regime.

- · Species differences may be in stand or understorey.
- Examples include grassland communities on coarse-textured or shallow soils; spruce-horsetail communities on floodplains; bogs and fens in large depressional areas; cedar-devil's club communities on moist, rich sites in a BGC unit where cedar-hemlock-oakfern communities occur on zonal sites

DC = Disclimax:

A self-perpetuating community that strongly differs in species composition from the edaphic or climatic climax expected for the site; normal succession has been arrested by an external physical or anthropogenic factor.

 Results from changes to the physical characteristics of the site, associated with disturbances such as fire, intensive grazing, or avalanche.

NOTE: The codes **EC** or **CC**, for Edaphic Climax or Climatic Climax, may be used where it is difficult to determine whether the successional status is "young" or "maturing."

23. Structural Stage¹

In the assessment of structural stage, structural features and age criteria should be considered. Use numeric and lowercase alphabetic codes unless otherwise directed. Modifiers for structural stage (Figure 1.2) and stand composition are optional. Separate modifier codes from the structural stage code with a slash (e.g., 7/mC; 3b/D). Uppercase codes in parentheses are used in Vegetation Resources Inventory (Resource Inventory Committee, 1997).

Post-disturbance stages, or environmentally limited structural development:

1 (SB) Sparse/bryoid Initial stages of primary and secondary succession; bryophytes and lichens often dominant; time since disturbance < 20 years for normal forest succession, may be prolonged (50–100+ years) where there is little or no soil development (bedrock, boulder fields); total shrub and herb cover < 20%; total tree cover < 10%.

Structural stage categories and modifiers presented here draw on schemes proposed by Hamilton (1988), Oliver and Larson (1990), Weetman et al. (1990), and Vegetation Inventory Working Group (1995).

- **1a** (SP) **Sparse** less than 10% vegetation cover; or
- **1b** (BR) **Bryoid** bryophyte and lichen-dominated communities (> 50% of total vegetation cover).

Stand initiation stages or environmentally induced structural development:

- 2 (H) Herb Early successional stage or herb communities maintained by environmental conditions or disturbance (e.g., snow fields, avalanche tracks, wetlands, flooding, grasslands, intensive grazing, intense fire damage); dominated by herbs (forbs, graminoids, ferns); some invading or residual shrubs and trees may be present; tree cover < 10%, shrubs ≤ 20% or < 33% of total cover, herb-layer cover > 20%, or ≥ 33% of total cover; time since disturbance < 20 years for normal forest succession; many nonforested communities are perpetually maintained in this stage.</p>
 - **2a** (FO) **Forb-dominated** includes non-graminoid herbs and ferns;
 - **2b** (GR) **Graminoid-dominated** includes grasses, sedges, reeds, and rushes;
 - 2c (AQ) Aquatic floating or submerged; does not include sedges growing in marshes with standing water (classed as 2b); or
 - 2d (DS) Dwarf shrub-dominated dominated by dwarf woody species such as Arctostaphylos alpina, Salix reticulata, Rhododendron lapponicum, Cassiope tetragona (see Table 3.1 in Vegetation section).
- 3 (SH) Shrub/Herb Early successional stage or shrub communities maintained by environmental conditions or disturbance; dominated by shrubby vegetation; seedlings and advance regeneration may be abundant; tree cover < 10%, shrub cover > 20% or ≥ 33% of total cover.
 - 3a (LS) Low shrub dominated by shrubby vegetation < 2 m tall; seedlings and advance regeneration may be abundant; time since disturbance < 20 years for normal forest succession; may be perpetuated indefinitely by environmental conditions or disturbance; or</p>
 - 3b (TS) Tall shrub dominated by shrubby vegetation that is 2–10 m tall; seedlings and advance regeneration may be abundant; time since disturbance < 40 years for normal forest succession; may be perpetuated indefinitely.

Stem exclusion stage:

- 4 (PS) Pole/Sapling Trees > 10 m tall, typically densely stocked, have overtopped shrub and herb layers; younger stands are vigorous (usually > 10–15 years old); older stagnated stands (up to 100 years old) are also included; self-thinning and vertical structure not yet evident in the canopy this often occurs by age 30 in vigorous broadleaf stands, which are generally younger than coniferous stands at the same structural stage; time since disturbance < 40 years for normal forest succession; up to 100+ years for dense (5000 15000+ stems per ha) stagnant stands.
- 5 (YF) Young Forest Self-thinning has become evident and the forest canopy has begun to differentiate into distinct layers (dominant, main canopy, and overtopped); vigorous growth and a more open stand than in the PS stage; begins as early as age 30 and extends to 50–80 years; time since disturbance generally 40–80 years, depending on tree species and ecological conditions.

Understorey reinitiation stages:

6 (MF) **Mature Forest** Trees established after the last disturbance have matured; a second cycle of shade-tolerant trees may have become established; understories become well developed as the canopy opens up; time since disturbance generally 80–140 years for BGC group A² and 80–250 years for group B³.

Old-growth stage:

7 (OF) Old Forest Old, structurally complex stands comprised mainly of shade-tolerant and regenerating tree species, although older seral and long-lived trees from a disturbance such as fire may still dominate the upper canopy; snags and coarse woody debris in all stages of decomposition and patchy understories typical; understories may include tree species uncommon in the canopy, because of inherent limitations of these species under the given conditions; time since disturbance generally > 140 years for BGC group A² and > 250 years for group B³.

² BGC Group A includes BWBSdk, BWBSmw, BWBSwk, BWBSvk, ESSFdc, ESSFdk, ESSFdv, ESSFxc, ICHdk, ICHdw, ICHmk1, ICHmk2, ICHmw1, ICHmw3, MS, SBPS, SBSdh, SBSdk, SBSdw, SBSmc, SBSmh, SBSmk, SBSmm, SBSmw, SBSwk1 (on plateau), and SBSwk3.

³ BGC Group B includes all other biogeoclimatic units.

Stand composition modifiers (stages 3-7 only)

- **C** = coniferous (> 75% of total tree cover is coniferous)
- **B** = broadleaf (> 75% of total tree cover is broadleaf)
- M = mixed (neither coniferous or broadleaf account for > 75% of total tree cover)

Structural stage modifiers (stages 4-7 only) (see Figure 1.2):

- s=single-storied Closed forest stand dominated by the overstorey crown class (dominant and co-dominant trees); intermediate and suppressed trees comprise less than 20% of all crown classes combined 4 ; advance regeneration in the understorey is generally sparse.
- **t = two-storied** Closed forest stand co-dominated by distinct overstorey and intermediate crown classes; the suppressed crown class is lacking or comprises less than 20% of all crown classes combined⁴; advance regeneration variable.
- **m = multistoried** Closed forest stand with all crown classes well represented; each of the intermediate and suppressed classes comprise greater than 20% of all crown classes combined⁴; advance regeneration variable.
- **i = irregular** Forest stand with very open overstorey and intermediate crown classes (totalling less than 30% cover), with well developed suppressed crown class; advance regeneration variable.
- **h = shelterwood** Forest stand with very open overstorey (less than 20% cover) with well developed suppressed crown class and/or advance regeneration in the understorey. Intermediate crown class generally absent.

24. Realm/Class

Currently applied to wetland and riparian ecosystems only. Enter the following codes for realm or group, where applicable, and class.

Terrestrial realm, transition group:

Tc Shrub carr Low-shrub-dominated ecosystem in frost-prone basins; never inundated and seasonally saturated; usually extremely mounded, shrubs on elevated sites; herb and moss layers diverse, often dominated by forbs and grasses.

⁴ Based on either basal area or percent cover estimates.

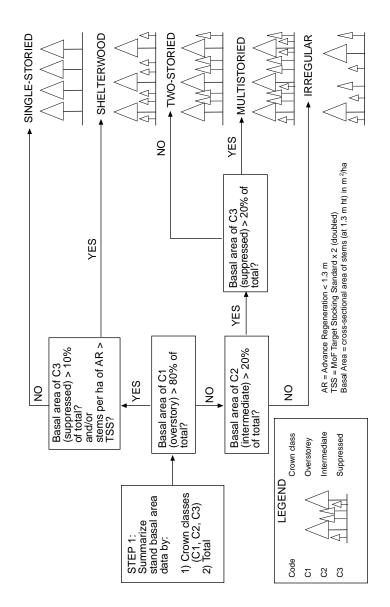


FIGURE 1.2. Stand structure modifiers.

- Th High meadow Mainly in subalpine and alpine regions; lush forb-rich flora; persistent snowpack and prolonged growing season seepage.
- **Tm Wet meadow** Develop on mineral materials; periodically saturated, seldom inundated; diverse community of grasses, low sedges, rushes (*Juncus* spp.), and forbs.
- Ts Saline meadow Occur in dry interior areas of province around saline lakes and in shallow depressions that dry out early in the growing season; high soil salinities; water table often remains high; salt-tolerant plants.

Terrestrial realm, flood group:

- Fl Low bench Flooded at least every other year for moderate periods of growing season; plant species adapted to extended flooding and abrasion; low or tall shrub physiognomy most common.
- Fm Middle bench Flooded every 1-6 years for short periods (10-25 days); deciduous or mixed forest dominated by species tolerant of flooding and periodic sedimentation; trees occur on elevated microsites.
- Fh High bench Only periodically and briefly inundated by high waters, but lengthy subsurface flow in the rooting zone; typically coniferdominated floodplains of larger coastal rivers.
- Ff Fringe Narrow linear communities along open water bodies where there is no floodplain; irregular flooding at depth, moderated microclimate, improved light regime (in forested areas), and/or mechanical disturbance by ice.

Wetland realm:

- **Wb Bog** Nutrient-poor peatlands (pH < 4.5) characterized by plant communities with a large component of ericaceous shrubs and *Sphagnum* mosses.
- Wf Fen Nutrient-medium peatlands fed by ground or surface water sources; dominated by sedges, grasses, reeds, and brown mosses; non-ericaceous shrubs common.
- Wm Marsh Mineral wetland that retains shallow surface water for much of growing season; dominated by emergent sedges, grasses, rushes, or reeds.
- Ws Swamp Treed or shrubby mineral wetland; water table at or near surface for most of year; if peat present, mainly dark and well decomposed; high cover of broadleaf or coniferous trees or tall shrubs, forbs and leafy mosses.

Ww Shallow water Distinct wetlands transitional between wetlands and aquatic ecosystems; characterized by rooted aquatics and standing water < 2 m deep in mid-summer.

Estuarine Realm:

- Em Salt marsh Tidally influenced wetland dominated by graminoid emergents; alternately flooded and exposed with daily tides; both marine and fresh water sources.
- **Ed Salt meadow** Tidally influenced herbaceous wetlands in upper intertidal and supratidal zones of estuaries; tidal flooding less frequent than daily.
- Es Salt swamp Treed or shrubby mineral wetlands in brackish lagoons; occasional tidal flooding and subsequent evaporation; waterlogged, highly saline soil.

25. Site Disturbance

Note any events that have caused vegetation and soil characteristics to differ from those expected at climax for the site. Be as specific as possible, including codes for the category and specific types of disturbance separated by periods. Record up to three different types of disturbance, separated by slashes. For example, enter **L.c./Fl.bb** for a clearcut that has been broadcast burned. If existing codes are inadequate, enter an "X" here and explain under "Notes".

A. Atmosphere-related effects

Use these codes if causative factors are no longer in effect or are isolated incidents. If effects are ongoing, code as an "Exposure Type" (Item 32).

- e. climatic extremes
 - co extreme cold
 - ht extreme heat
 - gl glaze ice
 - ha severe hail
 - sn heavy snow
- p. atmospheric pollution
 - ac acid rain
 - to toxic gases
- w. windthrow

B. Biotic effects

- **b.** beaver tree cutting
- d. domestic grazing/browsing
- w. wildlife grazing/browsing (5.1)⁵
- excrement accumulation (other than that normally associated with grazing/browsing) (5.1)⁵

- i. insects $(4.2)^5$
 - ki insect kill
 - in infestation
- p. disease (4.2)5
- v. aggressive vegetation

D. Disposals

- c. chemical spill or disposal
- e. effluent disposal
- g. domestic garbage disposal
- o. oil spill or disposal
- r. radioactive waste disposal or exposure

E Fires

- c. overstorey crown fire
- g. light surface (ground) fire
- r. repeated light surface fires
- s. severe surface fire
- i. repeated severe surface fires
- l. burning of logging slash
 - **bb** broadcast burn
 - **pb** piled and burned
 - wb burned windrows

L. Forest harvesting

- l. land clearing (includes abandoned agriculture)
- a. patch cut system
 - wr with reserves
- c. clearcut system (if slashburned, see also "Fires")
 - wr with reserves (patch retention)
- d. seed tree system
 - un uniform
 - **gr** grouped
- e. selection system
 - gr group selection
 - si single tree
 - st strip
- ${f s}$. shelterwood system
 - **un** uniform
 - **gr** group
 - st strip
 - ir irregular
 - na natural
 - nu nurse tree
- o. coppice

⁵ Record type or species under "Notes" using codes given in Appendix 4.2 of the Mensuration section or Appendix 5.1 of the Wildlife Habitat Assessment section of this manual.

M. Plant or site modification effects

- **c.** herbicide use (chemical)
- f. fertilization (specify type under "Notes")
- i. irrigation
- g. seeded or planted to grasses
- h. seeded or planted to herbs
- s. planted or seeded to shrubs
- t. planted or seeded to trees

P. Gathering or removal of plant products

- f. firewood gathering
- m. mushrooms
- o. moss
- s. shrubs (e.g., salal, falsebox)
- x. other (specify under "Notes")

S. Soil disturbance

- a. cultivation (agricultural)
- c. compaction
- **g.** gouging (> 5 cm into mineral soil)
- s. scalping (forest floor removed)
- f. sidecast/fill
- r. road bed, abandoned
- t. railway, abandoned
- e. excavation
- m. mining effects
 - pt placer tailings
 - rq rock quarrying (including open pit mines)
 - ta tailings
- p. mechanical site preparation
 - **bb** brush blading
 - ds drag scarification (anchor chain or shark fin)
 - dt disc trenching
 - md mounding
 - ps patch scarification
 - vp V-plowing
 - xx other (specify under "Notes")

T. Terrain-related effects

- a. avalanche
- **d.** recent deglaciation
- e. eolian (active deflation or deposition)
- s. terrain failures (active/recent slumps, slides, solifluction, etc.)
- v. volcanic activity

W. Water-related effects

- i. inundation (including temporary inundation resulting from beaver activity)
- temporary seepage (usually artificially induced; excludes intermittent seepage resulting from climatic conditions)
- d. water table control (diking, damming)
- **e.** water table depression (associated with extensive water extraction from wells)

X. Miscellaneous

(For other disturbance types, enter "X" and describe under "Notes")

26. Photo Roll and Frame Numbers

If photographs are taken, note the roll and frame numbers.

27. Elevation

Determine in the field using an altimeter. Accuracy of the measurement can be confirmed by consulting a topographic map. Record in *metres* with an estimate of accuracy.

28. Slope

Record *percent* slope gradient, measured with a clinometer or similar instrument.

29. Aspect

Record the orientation of the slope, measured by compass, in degrees.

- Enter due north as 0°.
- For level ground, enter "999."

30. Mesoslope Position

Indicate the position of plot relative to the localized catchment area (see Figure 1.3).

- **CR Crest** The generally convex uppermost portion of a hill; usually convex in all directions with no distinct aspect.
- **UP Upper Slope** The generally convex upper portion of the slope immediately below the crest of a hill; has a specific aspect.
- MD Middle Slope Area between the upper and lower slope; the surface profile is generally neither distinctly concave nor convex; has a straight or somewhat sigmoid surface profile with a specific aspect.
- **LW** Lower Slope The area toward the base of a slope; generally has a concave surface profile with a specific aspect.

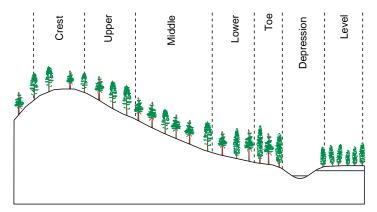


FIGURE 1.3. Mesoslope position.

- **TO** Toe The area demarcated from the lower slope by an abrupt decrease in slope gradient; seepage is typically present.
- **DP Depression** Any area concave in all directions; may be at the base of a meso-scale slope or in a generally level area.
- LV Level Any level meso-scale area not immediately adjacent to a mesoscale slope; the surface profile is generally horizontal and straight with no significant aspect.

31. Surface Topography

Note the general surface shape and the size, frequency, and type of microtopographic features. Describe to the level that best represents what you see, separating coding with periods (e.g., code a generally straight surface that is slightly mounded as **ST.sl.mnd** and a generally concave surface that is relatively flat as **CC.smo**).

General surface shape:

- **CC. Concave** surface profile is mainly "hollow" in one or several directions
- $\mbox{\bf CV.}$ Convex surface profile is mainly "rounded" like the exterior of a sphere
- ST. Straight surface profile is linear, either flat or sloping in one direction

Size and frequency of microtopographic features:

mc. micro - low relief features (< 0.3 m high) with minimal effect on

vegetation

sl. slightly – prominent features (0.3–1m high) spaced > 7 m apart

md. moderately - prominent features (0.3-1m high) spaced 3-7 m apart

st. strongly – prominent features (0.3–1m high) spaced 1–3 m apart

sv. severely – prominent features (0.3–1m high) spaced < 1 m apart

ex. extremely – very prominent features (> 1 m high) spaced > 3 m apart

ul. ultra – very prominent features (> 1 m high) spaced < 3 m apart

Types of microtopographic features:

cha channelled - incised water tracks or channels

dom domed - raised bogs

gul gullied - geomorphic ridge and ravine patterns

hmk hummocked – mounds composed of organic materials

lob lobed – solifluction lobes

mnd mounded - mounds composed of mineral materials

net netted – net vegetation patterns from freeze-thaw action in alpine or subarctic terrain

pol polygonal - polygonal patterns associated with permafrost

rib ribbed - wetland pattern with raised ridges perpendicular to direction of water flow

smo smooth - surface relatively flat

tus tussocked - associated with tussock-forming graminoids

32. Exposure Type

Note significant localized atmospheric and climate-related factors reflected in atypical soil and/or vegetation features. If existing codes are inadequate, enter an " \mathbf{X} " and explain under "Notes". If there is no evidence of exposure to anomalous conditions, enter " $\mathbf{N}\mathbf{A}$."

- AT Atmospheric toxicity For example, where highly acid or alkaline precipitation, or chemically toxic fumes from industrial plants affect soil chemistry and morphology, and the type and growth form of vegetation.
 - Soil indicators unusually high or low pH values; accumulations of chemicals normally either absent or present in small quantities.
 - Vegetation indicators defoliated areas; diseased or dead standing species; presence of several species tolerant to abnormal chemical accumulations.
- **CA Cold air drainage** Downslope areas through which cold air passes; often grade into frost pockets, but differ in that cold air does

not accumulate in them. Soil and vegetation indicators are similar to those for "FR," but the influence of cold temperatures is usually not as pronounced.

- FR Frost Cold air accumulation in depressions and valley bottoms associated with high night-time surface cooling and/or cold air drainage. Frost pockets are often surrounded by slopes leading to the higher elevations from which the cold air originates.
 - Soil indicators wet conditions and/or deep organic accumulations.
 - Vegetation indicators species normally found in colder conditions than those of the general area, such as *Abies lasiocarpa* in the IDF zone; the presence of frost-hardy shrubs and herbs, such as scrub birch, marsh cinquefoil, and/or shrubby cinquefoil; abundant frost cracks on the trunks of trees.
- IN Insolation Sites subjected to radiant solar heating to a significantly greater degree than on associated flat or gently sloping ground.
 Generally on SE, S, and SW aspects with slopes > 20–50%, depending on climate.
 - Soil indicators weaker than average soil profile development, reflecting a drier environment, or occasionally soil profiles with darker-coloured surface horizons.
 - Vegetation indicators heat-tolerant species; reduced tree growth; slow or sparse tree regeneration; open crown cover, and tree regeneration in distinct age groups, reflecting a history of wetter and drier years.
- **RN** Localized rainshadow Valleys that are protected from the prevailing winds so that they are significantly drier than surrounding areas.
 - Soil indicators weaker soil development resulting from less precipitation, or different soil development because of significantly different vegetation.
 - Vegetation indicators plant communities or species indicative of a drier local climate.
- **SA Saltspray** Areas that receive saltspray from a marine environment, affecting the type and growth form of the vegetation, and the chemical and morphological characteristics of the soil.
 - Soil indicators high pH and conductivity, presence of white salt accumulations as distinct crystals, and weak profile development.
 - Vegetation indicators an abundance of salt-tolerant species, and slow growth of many species.
- SF Fresh water spray Areas adjacent to waterfalls and large rapids that

receive spray from the rushing water; the resulting vegetation is noticably different from other areas adjacent to the river or stream.

- Soil indicators moister soils.
- Vegetation indicators species characteristic of moister sites are present or more abundant.
- SN Snow accumulation Areas that receive significantly more snow than surrounding areas, which results in different vegetation.
 - Soil indicators poorer soil development resulting from the shorter snow-free period, or moister soils because of the longer snow melt period.
 - Vegetation indicators species adapted to greater snow accumulations (i.e., resistant to breakage), or a shorter growing season; or vegetation displaying the effects of a shorter growing season more than in adjacent areas; or species or communities indicative of moister conditions because of greater snow melt.
- WI Wind Site is directly influenced by strong winds; for example, on exposed mountain tops, along seashores or large lakes, or where "wind funnelling" occurs because of the convergence of valleys in the direction of wind flow.
 - Soil indicators weak soil development because of scalped (eroded) profiles; evidence of soil erosion on windward side and deposition on leeside; duning.
 - Vegetation indicators strongly reduced height growth and gnarled growth form with tree tops and branches oriented downwind; wind-shorn thickets of trees or shrubs (wind-shorn surface of vegetation follows the outline of any object providing wind protection).
- X Miscellaneous Describe under "Notes".

33. Surface Substrate

Enter the proportion of the ground surface covered by each class of substrate. The total for all six classes should sum to 100%. Enter " $\mathbf{0}$ " if a substrate class is not present. Classes are defined as follows:

Organic matter Surficial accumulations of organic materials, including the following:

- organic layers ≥ 1 cm thick overlying mineral soil, cobbles, stones, or bedrock;
- layers of decaying wood < 10 cm thick;
- large animal droppings; and
- areas covered by mats of bunchgrasses (mats include L horizons).
- Areas of living grass or forb cover where mineral soil is visible

between stems are classed as mineral soil, as are exposed Ah or Ap horizons.

Decaying wood Fallen trees, large branches on the ground surface, and partially buried stumps with an exposed edge.

- Does not include freshly fallen material that has not yet begun to decompose.
- May be covered with mosses, lichens, liverworts, or other plants.
- If an organic layer has developed over the wood, decaying wood must be ≥ 10 cm thick, otherwise it is classed as "organic matter."

Bedrock Exposed consolidated mineral material.

- May have a partial covering of mosses, lichens, liverworts, or other epilithic plants.
- Does not qualify as bedrock if covered by unconsolidated mineral or organic material ≥ 1 cm in thickness.

Rock (cobbles and stones) Exposed unconsolidated rock fragments > 7.5 cm in diameter.

- May be covered by mosses, lichens, liverworts; or an organic layer
 1 cm in thickness.
- Does not include gravels < 7.5 cm in diameter.

Mineral Soil Unconsolidated mineral material of variable texture not covered by organic materials.

- May have a partial cover of mosses, lichens, and liverworts.
- Often associated with cultivation, tree tip-ups, active erosion or deposition, severe fires, trails, or late snow retention areas.
- Includes small cobbles and gravel < 7.5 cm in diameter.

Water Streams, puddles, or areas of open water in bogs or fens.

34. Notes

Record additional information that:

- further characterizes the site;
- · assists in finding the plot again;
- · explains unusual entries elsewhere on the form; or
- relates to a particular project which is not accommodated elsewhere on the forms.

APPENDIX 1.1 Biogeoclimatic Units of British Columbia

Zone	Subzone	Variant	Name
AT			Alpine Tundra Zone
			(no subzones recognized currently)
BG			Bunchgrass Zone
	BGxh BGxw	BGxh1 BGxh2 BGxh3 BGxw1 BGxw2	Very Dry Hot BG Okanagan BGxh Thompson BGxh Fraser BGxh Very Dry Warm BG Nicola BGxw Alkali BGxw
BWBS	6		Boreal White and Black Spruce Zone
	BWBSmv BWBSwk BWBSvk	BWBSmw1 BWBSmw2 BWBSwk1 BWBSwk2 BWBSwk3	Dry Cool BWBS Stikine BWBSdk Liard BWBSdk Moist Warm BWBS Peace BWBSmw Fort Nelson BWBSmw Wet Cool BWBS Murray BWBSwk Graham BWBSwk Kledo BWBSwk Very Wet Cool BWBS
CDF			Coastal Douglas-fir Zone
	CDFmm		Moist Maritime CDF
CWH			Coastal Western Hemlock Zone
	CWHxm CWHdm CWHds	CWHxm1 CWHxm2	Very Dry Maritime CWH Eastern CWHxm Western CWHxm Dry Maritime CWH Dry Submaritime CWH

Zone	Subzone	Variant	Name
		CWHds1	Southern CWHds
		CWHds2	Central CWHds
	CWHmm		Moist Maritime CWH
		CWHmm1	Submontane CWHmm
		CWHmm2	Montane CWHmm
	CWHms		Moist Submaritime CWH
		CWHms1	Southern CWHms
		CWHms2	Central CWHms
	CWHwh		Wet Hypermaritime CWH
		CWHwh1	Submontane CWHwh
		CWHwh2	Montane CWHwh
	CWHwm		Wet Maritime CWH
	CWHws		Wet Submaritime CWH
		CWHws1	Submontane CWHws
		CWHws2	Montane CWHws
	CWHvh		Very Wet Hypermaritime CWH
		CWHvh1	Southern CWHvh
		CWHvh2	Central CWHvh
	CWHvm		Very Wet Maritime CWH
		CWHvm1	Submontane CWHvm
		CWHvm2	Montane CWHvm
		CWHvm3	Central CWHvm
ESSF			Engelmann Spruce - Subalpine Fir Zone
	ESSFxc		Very Dry Cold ESSF
	ESSFxv		Very Dry Very Cold ESSF
	LODIAV	ESSFxv1	West Chilcotin ESSFxv
		ESSFxv2	Big Creek ESSFxv
	ESSFdk	20011172	Dry Cool ESSF
	ESSFdk ESSFdku		Dry Cool ESSF
	ESSFdku		Dry Cool ESSF Upper Dry Cool ESSF
			Dry Cool ESSF Upper Dry Cool ESSF Dry Cold ESSF
	ESSFdku		Dry Cool ESSF Upper Dry Cool ESSF Dry Cold ESSF Okanagan ESSFdc
	ESSFdku	ESSFdc1	Dry Cool ESSF Upper Dry Cool ESSF Dry Cold ESSF Okanagan ESSFdc Thompson ESSFdc
	ESSFdku ESSFdc	ESSFdc1	Dry Cool ESSF Upper Dry Cool ESSF Dry Cold ESSF Okanagan ESSFdc Thompson ESSFdc Dry Very Cold ESSF
	ESSFdku ESSFdc	ESSFdc1	Dry Cool ESSF Upper Dry Cool ESSF Dry Cold ESSF Okanagan ESSFdc Thompson ESSFdc
	ESSFdku ESSFdc	ESSFdc1 ESSFdc2	Dry Cool ESSF Upper Dry Cool ESSF Dry Cold ESSF Okanagan ESSFdc Thompson ESSFdc Dry Very Cold ESSF Moist Warm ESSF
	ESSFdku ESSFdc ESSFdv ESSFmw	ESSFdc1 ESSFdc2	Dry Cool ESSF Upper Dry Cool ESSF Dry Cold ESSF Okanagan ESSFdc Thompson ESSFdc Dry Very Cold ESSF Moist Warm ESSF Hemlock Phase, ESSFmw
	ESSFdku ESSFdc ESSFdv ESSFmw	ESSFdc1 ESSFdc2 ESSF mwh	Dry Cool ESSF Upper Dry Cool ESSF Dry Cold ESSF Okanagan ESSFdc Thompson ESSFdc Dry Very Cold ESSF Moist Warm ESSF Hemlock Phase, ESSFmw Moist Mild ESSF
	ESSFdku ESSFdc ESSFdv ESSFmw	ESSFdc1 ESSFdc2 ESSF mwh ESSFmm1	Dry Cool ESSF Upper Dry Cool ESSF Dry Cold ESSF Okanagan ESSFdc Thompson ESSFdc Dry Very Cold ESSF Moist Warm ESSF Hemlock Phase, ESSFmw Moist Mild ESSF Raush ESSFmm
	ESSFdku ESSFdc ESSFdv ESSFmw	ESSFdc1 ESSFdc2 ESSF mwh ESSFmm1	Dry Cool ESSF Upper Dry Cool ESSF Dry Cold ESSF Okanagan ESSFdc Thompson ESSFdc Dry Very Cold ESSF Moist Warm ESSF Hemlock Phase, ESSFmw Moist Mild ESSF Raush ESSFmm Robson ESSFmm
	ESSFdku ESSFdc ESSFdv ESSFmw ESSFmm	ESSFdc1 ESSFdc2 ESSF mwh ESSFmm1	Dry Cool ESSF Upper Dry Cool ESSF Dry Cold ESSF Okanagan ESSFdc Thompson ESSFdc Dry Very Cold ESSF Moist Warm ESSF Hemlock Phase, ESSFmw Moist Mild ESSF Raush ESSFmm Robson ESSFmm Moist Cool ESSF

Zone	Subzone	Variant	Name
		ESSFmv2	Bullmoose ESSFmv
		ESSFmv3	Omineca ESSFmv
		ESSFmv4	Graham ESSFmv
	ESSFwm		Wet Mild ESSF
	ESSFwk		Wet Cool ESSF
		ESSFwk1	Cariboo ESSFwk
		ESSFwk2	Misinchinka ESSFwk
	ESSFwc		Wet Cold ESSF
		ESSFwc1	Columbia ESSFwc
		ESSFwc2	Northern Monashee ESSFwc
		ESSFwc3	Cariboo ESSFwc
		ESSFwc4	Selkirk ESSFwc
	ESSFwv		Wet Very Cold ESSF
	ESSFvc		Very Wet Cold ESSF
	ESSFvv		Very Wet Very Cold ESSF
	ESSFxcp		Very Dry Cold Parkland ESSF
	ESSFxvp		Very Dry Very Cold Parkland ESSF
	•	ESSFxvp1	West Chilcotin ESSFxvp
		ESSFxvp2	Big Creek ESSFxvp
	ESSFdkp	•	Dry Cool Parkland ESSF
	ESSFdcp		Dry Cold Parkland ESSF
	•	ESSFdcp1	Okanagan ESSFdcp
		ESSFdcp2	Thompson ESSFdcp
	ESSFdvp	,	Dry Very Cold Parkland ESSF
	ESSFmw		Moist Warm Parkland ESSF
	ESSFmw	-	Hemlock Phase, ESSFmwp
	ESSFmm	p	Moist Mild Parkland ESSF
		ESSFmmp1	Raush ESSFmmp
		ESSFmmp2	Robson ESSFmmp
	ESSFmkp	•	Moist Cool Parkland ESSF
	ESSFmcp		Moist Cold Parkland ESSF
	ESSFmvp)	Moist Very Cold Parkland ESSF
	-	ESSFmvp1	Nechako ESSFmvp
		ESSFmvp2	Bullmoose ESSFmvp
		ESSFmvp3	Omineca ESSFmvp
		ESSFmvp4	Graham ESSFmvp
	ESSFwmp)	Wet Mild Parkland ESSF
	ESSFwcp		Wet Cold Parkland ESSF
	-	ESSFwcp2	Northern Monashee ESSFwcp
		ESSFwcp3	Cariboo ESSFwcp
		ESSFwcp4	Selkirk ESSFwcp
	ESSFwvp	-	Wet Very Cold Parkland ESSF
	ESSFvcp		Very Wet Cold Parkland ESSF
	ESSFvvp		Very Wet Very Cold Parkland ESSF

Zone	Subzone	Variant	Name
ICH			Interior Cedar – Hemlock Zone
ICH	ICHxw ICHdw ICHdk ICHmw ICHmm ICHmk	ICHmw1 ICHmw2 ICHmw3 ICHmk1 ICHmk2 ICHmk3 ICHmc1 ICHmc1a ICHmc2 ICHwk1 ICHwk1 ICHwk1c ICHwk2	Very Dry Warm ICH Dry Warm ICH Dry Cool ICH Moist Warm ICH Golden ICHmw Columbia-Shuswap ICHmw Thompson ICHmw Moist Mild ICH Moist Cool ICH Kootenay ICHmk Thompson ICHmk Horsefly ICHmk Moist Cold ICH Nass ICHmc Amabilis Fir Phase, ICHmc1 Hazelton ICHmc Wet Cool ICH Wells Gray ICHwk Cold Air Phase, ICHwk1 Ouesnel ICHwk
	ICHwc ICHvk	ICHwk3 ICHwk4 ICHvk1 ICHvk1c ICHvk2	Goat ICHwk Goat ICHwk Cariboo ICHwk Wet Cold ICH Very Wet Cool ICH Mica ICHvk Cold Air Phase, ICHvk1 Slim ICHvk Very Wet Cold ICH
IDF			Interior Douglas-fir Zone
	IDFxw IDFxm IDFdw	IDFxh1 IDFxh1a IDFxh1b IDFxh2 IDFxh2a IDFxh2b	Very Dry Hot IDF Okanagan IDFxh Grassland Phase, IDFxh1 Steep South Phase, IDFxh1 Thompson IDFxh Grassland Phase, IDFxh2 Steep South Phase, IDFxh2 Very Dry Warm IDF Very Dry Mild IDF Dry Warm IDF

Zone	Subzone	Variant	Name
	IDFdm IDFdk IDFmw	IDFdm1 IDFdm2 IDFdk1 IDFdk1a IDFdk1b IDFdk2 IDFdk2b IDFdk3 IDFdk4 IDFmw1 IDFmw2 IDFmw2	Dry Mild IDF Kettle IDFdm Kootenay IDFdm Dry Cool IDF Thompson IDFdk Grassland Phase, IDFdk1 Steep South Phase, IDFdk1 Cascade IDFdk Steep South Phase, IDFdk2 Fraser IDFdk Chilcotin IDFdk Moist Warm IDF Okanagan IDFmw Thompson IDFmw Grassland Phase, IDFmw2 Wet Warm IDF
MH			Mountain Hemlock Zone
	MHmm MHwh MHmmp MHwhp	MHmm1 MHmm2 MHmm2e MHwh1 MHwh2 MHmmp1 MHmmp2 MHmmp2e MHwhp1 MHwhp1	Moist Maritime MH Windward MHmm Leeward MHmm Engelmann Spruce Phase, MHmm2 Wet Hypermaritime MH Windward MHwh Leeward MHwh Moist Maritime Parkland MH Windward MHmmp Leeward MHmmp Engelmann Spruce Phase, MHmmp2 Wet Hypermaritime Parkland MH Windward MHwhp Leeward MHwhp
MS			Montane Spruce Zone
	MSxk MSxv MSdm MSdk MSdc	MSdm1 MSdm2	Very Dry Cool MS Very Dry Very Cold MS Dry Mild MS Okanagan MSdm Thompson MSdm Dry Cool MS Dry Cold MS

Zone	Subzone	Variant	Name
	MSdv	MSdc1 MSdc2	Bridge MSdc Tatlayoko MSdc Dry Very Cold MS
PP			Ponderosa Pine Zone
	PPxh PPdh	PPxh1 PPxh1a PPxh2 PPxh2a PPdh1 PPdh2	Very Dry Hot PP Okanagan PPxh Grassland Phase, PPxh1 Thompson PPxh Grassland Phase, PPxh2 Dry Hot PP Kettle PPdh Kootenay PPdh
SBPS			Sub-Boreal Pine – Spruce Zone
	SBPSxc SBPSdc SBPBmk SBPSmc		Very Dry Cold SBPS Dry Cold SBPS Moist Cool SBPS Moist Cold SBPS
SBS			Sub-Boreal Spruce Zone
	SBSdk SBSdk SBSmh SBSmw SBSmm SBSmk	SBSdh1 SBSdh2 SBSdw1 SBSdw2 SBSdw3	Dry Hot SBS McLennan SBSdh Robson SBSdh Dry Warm SBS Horsefly SBSdw Blackwater SBSdw Stuart SBSdw Dry Cool SBS Moist Hot SBS Moist Warm SBS Moist Mild SBS Moist Cool SBS
	SBSmc	SBSmk1 SBSmk2 SBSmc1 SBSmc2 SBSmc3	Mossvale SBSmk Williston SBSmk Moist Cold SBS Moffat SBSmc Babine SBSmc Kluskus SBSmc

Zone	Subzone	Variant	Name
	SBSwk SBSvk	SBSwk1 SBSwk2 SBSwk3 SBSwk3a	Wet Cool SBS Willow SBSwk Finlay-Peace SBSwk Takla SBSwk Douglas-fir Phase, SBSwk3 Very Wet Cool SBS
SWB			Spruce - Willow - Birch Zone
	SWBdk SWBdks SWBmk SWBmks SWBvk SWBvks		Dry Cool SWB Dry Cool Scrub SWB Moist Cool SWB Moist Cool Scrub SWB Very Wet Cool SWB Very Wet Cool SCrub SWB

APPENDIX 1.2. Ecosections of British Columbia

Ecoregion	Ecosection	Code
COAST AND MOUNTAINS		
CASCADE RANGES	Northwestern Cascade Ranges	NWC
CASCADIA CONTINENTAL SHELF	Vancouver Island Shelf	VIS
COASTALGAP	Hecate Lowland	HEL
	Kitimat Ranges	KIR
HECATE CONTINENTAL SHELF	Dixon Entrance	DIE
	Hecate Strait	HES
	Queen Charlotte Sound	QCS
3.1. GG D 1 GT3.	Queen Charlotte Strait	QCT
NASS BASIN		NAB
NASS RANGES NORTHERN COASTAL MOUNTAINS	Alaska Panhandle Mountains	NAR APM
NORTHERN COASTAL MOUNTAINS		ALR
	Alsek Ranges Boundary Ranges	BOR
PACIFIC RANGES	Eastern Pacific Ranges	EPR
TACIFIC KANGES	Northern Pacific Ranges	NPR
	Outer Fiordland	OUF
	Southern Pacific Ranges	SPR
QUEEN CHARLOTTE LOWLAND		QCL
QUEEN CHARLOTTE RANGES	Skidegate Plateau	SKP
	Windward Queen Charlotte Mtns.	WQC
WESTERN VANCOUVER ISLAND	Nahwitti Lowland	NWL
	Northern Island Mountains	NIM
	Windward Island Mountains	WIM
GEORGIA DEPRESSION		
EASTERN VANCOUVER ISLAND	Leeward Island Mountains	LIM
LOUEDMANHAND	Nanaimo Lowland	NAL
LOWER MAINLAND	Fraser Lowland	FRL
GEORGIA-PUGET BASIN	Georgia Lowland Juan de Fuca Strait	GEL JDF
GEORGIA-FUGEI BASIN	Southern Gulf Islands	SGI
	Strait of Georgia	SOG
CENTRAL INTERIOR	-	
BULKLEY RANGES		BUR
CHILCOTIN RANGES	Central Chilcotin Ranges	CCR
	Western Chilcotin Ranges	WCR
FRASER PLATEAU	Bulkley Basin	BUB
	Cariboo Basin	CAB
	Cariboo Plateau	CAP
	Chilcotin Plateau	CHP

Ecoregion	Ecosection	Code
	Fraser River Basin Nazko Upland Nechako Upland Quesnel Lowland Western Chilcotin Upland	FRB NAU NEU QUL WCU
SUB-BOREAL INTERIOR		
CENTRAL CANADIAN ROCKY MOUNTAINS FRASER BASIN	Hart Foothills Hart Ranges Misinchinka Ranges Peace Foothills Babine Upland	HAF HAR MIR PEF BAU
OMINECA MOUNTAINS	McGregor Plateau Nechako Lowland Eastern Skeena Mountains Manson Plateau Parsnip Trench	MCP NEL ESM MAP PAT
SKEENA MOUNTAINS	Southern Omineca Mountains Northern Skeena Mountains Southern Skeena Mountains	SOM NSM SSM
SOUTHERN INTERIOR MOUNTAIN	S	
COLUMBIA HIGHLANDS NORTHERN COLUMBIA MOUNTAINS	Bowron Valley Quesnel Highland Shuswap Highland Cariboo Mountains Central Columbia Mountains	BOV QUH SHH CAM CCM
EASTERN CONTINENTAL RANGES NORTHERN CONTINENTAL DIVIDE SELKIRK-BITTERROOT FOOTHILLS SOUTHERN ROCKY MOUNTAIN TRENCH WESTERN CONTINENTAL RANGES	Eastern Purcell Mountains McGillivray Range Northern Kootenay Mountains Southern Columbia Mountains Front Ranges Border Ranges Crown of the Continent Selkirk Foothills Big Bend Trench East Kootenay Trench Upper Fraser Trench Central Park Ranges Northern Park Ranges Southern Park Ranges	EPM MCR NKM SCM FRR BRR COC SFH BBT EKT UFT CPK NPK SPK
SOUTHERN INTERIOR		
INTERIOR TRANSITION RANGES	Leeward Pacific Ranges Pavilion Ranges Southern Chilcotin Ranges	LPR PAR SCR

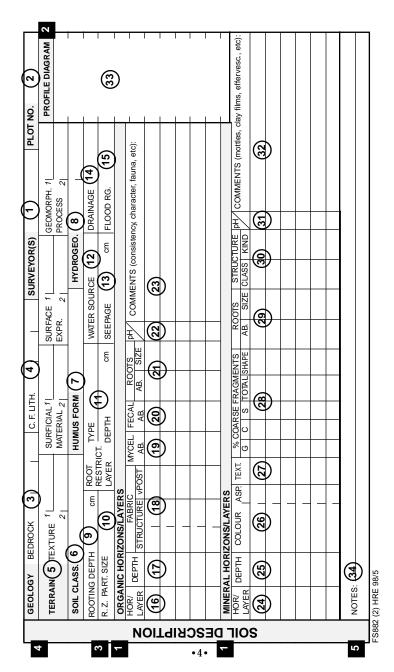
Ecoregion	Ecosection	Code
OKANOGAN HIGHLAND NORTHERN CASCADE RANGES THOMPSON-OKANAGAN PLATEAU	Southern Okanogan Basin Southern Okanogan Highland Hozameen Range Okanagan Range Northern Okanagan Basin Northern Okanagan Highland Northern Thompson Upland Southern Thompson Upland Thompson Basin	SOB SOH HOR OKR NOB NOH NTU STU THB
BOREAL PLAINS		
CENTRALALBERTA UPLAND SOUTHERNALBERTA UPLAND PEACE RIVER BASIN	Clear Hills Halfway Plateau Kiskatinaw Plateau Peace Lowland	CLH HAP KIP PEL
TAIGA PLAINS		
HAY RIVER LOWLAND MUSKWA PLATEAU NORTHERN ALBERTA UPLAND	Fort Nelson Lowland Etsho Plateau Maxhamish Upland Petitot Plain	FNL MUP ETP MAU PEP
NORTHERN BOREAL MOUNTAINS		
HYLAND HIGHLAND LIARD BASIN NORTHERN CANADIAN ROCKY MOUNTAINS BOREAL MOUNTAINS AND PLATEAUS SOUTHERNYUKON LAKES ST. ELIAS MOUNTAINS YUKON-STIKINE HIGHLANDS	Liard Plain Eastern Muskwa Ranges Muskwa Foothills Western Muskwa Ranges Cassiar Ranges Kechika Mountains Southern Boreal Plateau Stikine Plateau Teslin Plateau Tuya Range Teslin Basin Icefield Ranges Tagish Highland Tahltan Highland Tatshenshini Basin	HYH LIP EMR MUF WMR CAR KEM SBP STP TEP TUR TEB ICR TAH THH TAB

2 SOIL DESCRIPTION

Cont	ents	Page
Soil E	Description Form	4
	Procedure	5
	oleting the Form	6
1.	Surveyor	6
2.	Plot No	6
3.	Bedrock Type	6
4.	Coarse Fragment Lithology	8
5.	Terrain Classification	8
6.	Soil Classification	14
7.	Humus Form	15
8.	Hydrogeomorphic Units	15
9.	Rooting Depth	18
10.	Rooting Zone Particle-Size	18
11.	Root Restricting Layer	20
12.	Water source	20
13.	Seepage Water Depth	21
14.	Drainage Class and Soil Moisture Subclass	21
15.	Flooding Regime	23
Orgai	nic Horizons and Layers	24
16.	Horizon/Layer	24
	Codes for master organic horizons	25
	Codes for subordinate organic horizons	25
	Lowercase modifiers	26
	Codes for organic layers	27
	Tiers	27
17.	Depth	27
18.	Fabric	28
	Structure	28
	von Post scale of decomposition	29
19.	Mycelial Abundance	30
20.	Fecal Abundance	30
21.	Roots	31
22.	pH	31
23.	Comments section	32
	Consistence	32
	Character	32

		Page
Mine	ral Horizons and Layers	35
24.	Horizon/Layer	35
	Codes for major horizons	35
	Codes for layers	35
	Lowercase modifiers	35
	Mineral diagnostic horizons	38
25.	Depth	39
26.	Colour	39
27.	Texture	40
28.	Percent Coarse Fragments	41
29.	Roots	41
30.	Structure	42
31.	pH	44
32.	Comments	44
	Mottling	44
	Clay films	45
	Effervescence	48
	Horizon porosity	49
33.	Profile diagram	49
34.	Notes	49
Appe	ndices	
2.1	Codes for Soil Orders, Great Groups	
	and Subgroups	51
2.2	Key to Soil Orders	55
2.3	Key to Humus Forms	57
2.4	Key to Soil Texture	59
Table	S	
2.1	Sedimentary rock codes	6
2.2	Igneous rock codes	7
2.3	Metamorphic rock codes	8
2.4	Terrain texture codes	9
2.5	Surficial material codes	11
2.6	Surface expression codes	12
2.7	Geomorphological process codes	13
2.8	Qualifier codes	14
2.9	Codes for humus orders and groups	15
2.10	Codes for hydrogeomorphic systems	16

2.11	Codes for hydrogeomorphic subsystems 16
2.12	Rooting zone particle size classes
2.13	Codes for root-restricting layers
2.14	Water source codes
2.15	Drainage classes and codes
2.16	Soil moisture subclasses and codes
2.17	Codes for frequency of flooding
2.18	Codes for duration and timing of flooding 24
2.19	Guidelines for differentiating between upland and
	wetland organic horizons 24
2.20	Degree of aggregation codes
2.21	Kind of aggregation codes
2.22	von Post decomposition classes
2.23	Mycelial abundance classes and codes
2.24	Fecal abundance classes and codes
2.25	Root abundance and size classes and codes
	(organic layer)
2.26	Codes for methods of pH measurement
2.27	Consistency classes and codes
2.28	Character classes and codes
2.29	Colour aspects and codes for mineral soils 40
2.30	Size classes and type codes for coarse fragments 41
2.31	Root abundance and size classes and codes
	(mineral horizon)
2.32	Codes for kind and class of soil particle structure 42
2.33	Abundance and size codes for mottles 44
2.34	Contrast codes for mottles
2.35	Clay film frequency classes
2.36	Clay film thickness classes
2.37	Codes to describe degree of effervescence
2.38	Mineral horizon porosity classes
Ei arra	
Figur 2.1	Relationship of size and roundness of the clastic
۵.1	textural terms
2.2	Rooting zone particle size classes
2.3	Major kinds of soil fauna
2.4	Soil texture triangle
2.5	Diagrammatic representation of soil structure
2.6	Example of profile diagram
۵.0	Example of prome diagram



Field Procedure

Getting Started

- 1. Locate plot boundaries, assess variability, select pit location(s).
- Excavate pit (generally 50-75 cm in depth) leaving the face and sides undisturbed around the ground surface.
- 3. While excavating, observe:
 - · organic horizon depths and fabric;
 - · mineral horizon depths, colours, structure, and textural changes;
 - · percentage and shape of coarse fragments;
 - · rooting abundance, depth, and restrictions; and
 - · mottling, water seepage, or water table.
- 4. Lay out notes, forms, and soil description tools.
- 5. Clean off face from top to bottom (and photograph if required).
 - Note horizon changes and mark with knife indentations or golf tees.
 - Collect soil texture samples from bottom to top and put aside.

Record and Classify (see tab numbers on sample form, facing page)

- Designate horizons on form (organic and mineral horizons/layers). For each horizon (depending on survey objectives/requirements):
 - Record average starting and ending depths.
 - For organic horizon, record fabric, mycelia and fecal abundance, rooting, and pH.
 - For mineral horizons, hand-texture soil samples and determine colours.
 Record percent and shape of coarse fragments, rooting, structure, and pH.
 - Note important observations in comments (e.g. soil fauna, mottles, clay films, etc.).
 - · confirm original horizon designations
- 2 Sketch a profile diagram to approximate scale.
- 3 Record:
 - · rooting depth, particle size, and restricting layer
 - water source, seepage depth, drainage class, and flooding regime
- 4 Classify:
 - bedrock geology and coarse fragment lithology type(s)
- terrain unit(s), soil pedon, humus form, and hydrogeomorphic unit
 Use the "Notes" section to summarize or describe important soil features not otherwise collected on the form, or are significant to the study, classifications, or management interpretations.

Check and Integrate

Check the form to ensure there are no missing data, and then (under most circumstances) fill in the pit. Strike through any fields that were not assessed. Integrate the soil data with other site factors to determine and record the soil moisture and soil nutrient regimes on the site description form.

Completing the Form

Numbered items below refer to circled numbers on the Soil Description Form shown at the beginning of this section. See "Field Procedure" for a recommended sequence for completing the form.

1. Surveyor

Indicate the first initial and last name of the person(s) who described and classified the soil profile.

2. Plot Number

Record the plot number from the top of the Site Description Form.

3. Bedrock Type

Record general or specific codes (see Tables 2.1, 2.2, 2.3) for up to three rock types in the underlying bedrock, in order of dominance if possible. This is particularly important on sites with shallow soils or bedrock exposure.

TABLE 2.1. Sedimentary rock codes

	General	Code	Specific	Code
Clastic,	Fine	kf	Calcareous Siltstone	kz
calcareous	grained		Calcareous Mudstone	kd
			Calcareous Shale	kh
	Medium	km	Calcareous Greywacke	kg
	grained		Calcareous Arkose	ka
			Calcareous Sandstone	ks
	Coarse	kc		
	grained		Calcareous Conglomerate	kn
			Calcareous Breccia	kb
Clastic, non-	Fine	uf	Siltstone	zl
calcareous	grained		Mudstone	md
			Shale	sh
	Medium	um	Sandstone	SS
	grained		Greywacke	gk
			Arkose	ak
	Coarse	uc	Conglomerate	cg
	grained		Breccia	bx

	General	Code	Specific	Code
Precipitates,	Calcareous	pk	Travertine Limestone	tv ls
crystalline			Dolomite	do
	Non-calcareous	pu	Gypsum Limonite Barite	gy li ba
Organic	Calcareous	ok	Mar	ma
	Carbonaceous	ос	Lignite Coal	lg co

TABLE 2.2. Igneous rock codes

	General	Code	Specific	Code
Intrusive	Acid (felsic)	ia	Syenite	sy
			Granite	gr
			Quartz Monzonite	qm
			Granodiorite	gd
	Intermediate	ii	Quartz Diorite	qd
			Diorite	di
	Basic (mafic)	ib	Quartz	qg
			Gabbro	gb
			Pyroxenite	рy
			Dunite	du
Extrusive	Acid (felsic)	ea	Trachyte	tr
			Rhyolite	rh
			Dacite	da
	Intermediate	ei	Andesite	an
	Basic (mafic)	eb	Quartz Basalt	qb
			Basalt	bs
	Recent lava flow	la		
	Pyroclastic	ер	Tuff	tu
	-	_	Volcanic Breccia	vb
			Agglomerate	ag

TABLE 2.3. Metamorphic rock codes

	General	Code	Specific	Code
Foliated	Fine grained	ff	Slate	sl
	G		Phylite	ph
	Medium to	fm	Schist	sc
	coarse grained		Gneiss	gn
			Granite Gneiss	gg
			Diorite Gneiss	dg
	Coarse grained	fc	Migmatite	mi
Non-	Fine grained	nf	Argillite	ar
foliated			Serpentinite	sp
	Medium to	nm	Quartzite	qt
	coarse grained		Hornfels	hf
			Granulite	gl
	Coarse grained	nc	Amphibolite	am
			Hornblendite	hb
	Calcareous	nk	Marble	mb
			Dolomite Marble	dm
			Serpentine Marble	sm

4. Coarse Fragment Lithology

Record up to three rock types in order of dominance from left to right on the form that make up the coarse fraction (i.e., gravels, cobbles, and stones) of the soil material. Characters are recorded using the same codes as outlined for bedrock type. If the lithologies are so mixed that dominance can not be determined, record by entering the code "mx."

5. Terrain Classification

Four information fields are provided for recording terrain texture, surficial material, surface expression and geomorphological process, respectively (Howes and Kenk 1997) (see Tables 2.4, 2.5, 2.6, and 2.7 and Figure 2.1). Up to three codes can be entered in each of these fields. Place qualifying descriptor codes (Table 2.8) in the appropriate field to the right of any other codes used in that field (superscript codes are no longer used). Code line 1 for the uppermost stratigraphic layer, and code line 2 for an underlying layer. For those wishing to use terrain subclasses and subtypes, refer to Howes and Kenk (1997).

TABLE 2.4. Terrain texture codes

Code	Name	Size (mm)	Other Characteristics
a	Blocks	> 256	Angular particles
b	Boulders	> 256	Rounded and subrounded particles
k	Cobble	64-256	Rounded and subrounded particles
p	Pebbles	2-64	Rounded and subrounded particles
s	Sand	0.062-2.000	
z	Silt	0.002-0.062	
c	Clay	< 0.002	
d	Mixed fragments	> 2	Mix of rounded and angular particles
g	Gravel	> 2	Mix of boulders, cobbles, and pebbles
x	Angular	> 2	Mix of blocks and rubble
r	Rubble	2-256	Angular particles
m	Mud	< 0.062	Mix of clay and silt
y	Shells	_	Shells or shell fragments
e	Fibric	_	Well-preserved fibre; (40%) identified after rubbing
u	Mesic	_	Intermediate composition between fibric and humic
h	Humic	_	Decomposed organic material; (10%) identified after rubbing

FIGURE 2.1. Relationship of size and roundness of the clastic textural terms.

TABLE 2.5. Surficial (genetic) material codes

Code	Name	(Assumed status)	Description
A	Anthropogenic	(A)	Artificial or human- modified material
C	Colluvium	(A)	Products of mass wastage
D	Weathered bedrock	(A)	<i>In situ</i> , decomposed bedrock
E	Eolian	(I)	Materials deposited by wind action
F	Fluvial	(I)	River deposits
FG	Glaciofluvial	(I)	Ice contact fluvial material
I	Ice	(A)	Permanent snow, glaciers, and icefields
L	Lacustrine	(I)	Lake sediments; includes wave deposits
LG	Glaciolacustrine	(I)	Ice contact lacustrine material
M	Morainal	(I)	Material deposited directly by glaciers
0	Organic	(A)	Accumulation/decay of vegetative matter
R	Bedrock	(-)	Outcrops/rocks covered by less than 10 cm of soil
U	Undifferentiated	(-)	Layered sequence; three materials or more
V	Volcanic	(I)	Unconsolidated pyroclastic sediments
W	Marine	(I)	Marine sediments; includes wave deposits
WG	Glaciomarine	(I)	Ice contact marine sediments

TABLE 2.6. Surface expression codes

Code	Name	Description	
a	Moderate slope	Unidirectional surface; > 15° to < 26°	
b	Blanket	A mantle of unconsolidated materials; $> 1 \text{ m}$ thick	
c	Cone(s)	A cone or segment of a cone; $> 15^{\circ}$	
d	Depression(s)	A lower area surrounded by a higher terrain	
f	Fan(s)	A segment of a cone; up to 15°	
h	Hummock(s)	Hillocks and hollows, irregular in plan; 1535°	
j	Gentle slope	Unidirectional surface; > 3° and $\leq 15^{\circ}$	
k	Moderately steep slope	Unidirectional surface; > 26° and < 35	
m	Rolling	Elongate hillocks; 3–15°; parallel forms in plan view	
p	Plain	Unidirectional surface; up to 3°	
r	Ridge(s)	Elongate hillocks; 15–35°; parallel forms in plan view	
s	Steep slope	Steep slopes; > 35°	
t	Terrace(s)	Step-like topography	
u	Undulating	Hillocks and hollows; up to $<15^{\circ}\!;$ irregular in plan view	
v	Veneer	Mantle of unconsolidated material; 0.1 to 1.0 m thick	
w	Mantle of variable thickness	A layer or discontinuous layer of surficial materials of variable thickness that fills or partially fills depressions in an irregular substrate. The thickness ranges from 0 to 3 m.	
x	Thin veneer	A dominance of very thin surficial materials about 2–20 cm thick	

TABLE 2.7. Geomorphological process codes

Code	Name	(Assumed status)	Description
A	Avalanches	(A)	Terrain modified by snow avalanches
В	Braiding	(A)	Diverging/converging channels; unvegetated bars
C	Cryoturbation	(A)	Materials modified by frost heaving and churning
D	Deflation	(A)	Removal of sand and silt by wind action
E	Channeled	(I)	Channel formation by meltwater
F	Slow mass	(A)	Slow downslope movement of masses of cohesive or non-cohesive material
Н	Kettle	(I)	Depressions in surficial material resulting from the melting of buried or partially buried glacier ice
I	Irregular channel	(A)	A single, clearly defined main channel displaying irregular turns and bends
J	Anastomosing channel	(A)	A channel zone where channels diverge and converge around many vegetated islands
K	Karst	(A)	Processes associated with the solution of carbonates
L	Surface seepage	(A)	Zones of active seepage often found along the base of slope positions
M	Meandering channels	(A)	Channels characterized by a regular pattern of bends with uniformed amplitude and wave length
N	Nivation	(A)	Erosion beneath and along the margin of snow patches

Code	Name	(Assumed status)	Description
P	Piping	(A)	Subterranean erosion by flowing water
R	Rapid mass movement	(A)	Rapid downslope movement of dry, moist, or saturated debris
S	Solifluction	(A)	Slow downslope movement of saturated overburden across a frozen or otherwise impermeable substrate
U	Inundation	(A)	Seasonally under water because of high water table
v	Gully erosion	(A)	Parallel/subparallel ravines caused by running water
W	Washing	(A)	Modification by wave action
X	Permafrost	(A)	Processes controlled by the presence of permafrost
Z	Periglacial processes	(A)	Solifluction, cryoturbation, and nivation processes occurring within a single unit

TABLE 2.8. Qualifier codes

Code	Name	Description
A	Active	Used to qualify surficial material and geomorphological
I	Inactive	processes with regard to their current state of activity.

6. Soil Classification

The Canadian System of Soil Classification (Soil Classification Working Group, 1998) is tabulated alphabetically by soil order. Codes for great groups and subgroups are given in Appendix 2.1. Appendix 2.2 includes a key to soil orders. For those wishing to use family and phase criteria, refer to Soil Classification Working Group (1998) and include in "Notes."

7. Humus Form

Humus forms are classified to order and group according to *Towards a Taxonomic Classification of Humus Forms* (Green et al. 1993) Use Table 2.9 to enter codes. Appendix 2.3 contains a key to humus forms. For those wishing to use phases, refer to Green et.al. (1993), and include in "Notes."

TABLE 2.9. Codes for humus orders and groups

Order	Group	Code
MOR (R)	Hemimor	HR
	Humimor	UR
	Resimor	RR
	Lignomor	LR
	Hydromor	YR
	Fibrimor	FR
	Mesimor	MR
MODER (D)	Mormoder	RD
, ,	Leptomoder	TD
	Mullmoder	MD
	Lignomoder	LD
	Hydromoder	YD
	Saprimoder	SD
MULL (L)	Vermimull	VL
` ,	Rhizomull	ZL
	Hydromull	YL

8. Hydrogeomorphic Units

The *system* defines broad hydrological processes which characterize landscape units and ecosystems by water sources and hydrodynamics. *Element groups* divide a system by patterns of waterflow which indicate generically hydrodynamics, water source, and connectivity in the landscape. Record the system code first and the element group code (where applicable) second (e.g., Fra= alluvial river). Subsystem codes are only presented for lacustrine, palustrine, and fluvial sites; those for other systems are under development. Use the codes in Tables 2.10 and 2.11.

TABLE 2.10. Codes for hydrogeomorphic systems

Code	System	Description
L	Lacustrine	Occurs adjacent to lakes and ponds and is directly affected by lacustrine processes (e.g., wave action, sedimentation, and relatively high nutrient content of flood waters).
P	Palustrine	Occurs in basins and depressions with poor drainage that collect water flows from runoff, groundwater, and precipitation. Often peatlands, ponds, and marshes.
F	Fluvial ^a	Occurs along flowing water courses, the water course itself, and the surrounding (riparian) terrain and vegetation. Subject to flooding and sedimentation processes.
U	Upland	Occurs in sloping, level, and depressional sites not described by other hydrogeomorphic systems.
E	Estuarine	Consists of intertidal habitats where ocean water is at least occasionally diluted by freshwater runoff from the land. Occurs at the confluence of rivers and ocean and has characteristics that reflect the flooding and salinity gradients found there.
M	Marine	Exposed to waves and currents of the open ocean. Water regimes are determined primarily by the ebb and flow of oceanic tides.

^a Modifiers: \mathbf{r} = river (20 m+ wide); \mathbf{s} = stream (5–20 m); \mathbf{c} = creek (1.5–5 m); \mathbf{v} = rivulet (< 1.5 m).

TABLE 2.11. Codes for hydrogeomorphic subsystems

System	Element Group	Code	Description
Lacustrine or palustrine; confined basins	Closed basin	cb	Basin receives water from sur- rounding upland only, no inlet or outlet channel.
	Overflow basin	ob	Basin receives water from upland only; excess water flows through an outlet channel.

System	Element Group	Code	Description
	Linked basin	lb	Basin receives water from upland and an inflow stream; excess water flows though an outflow. Includes basins with slow streams where there is little sedimentation or erosion.
	Terminal basin	tb	Basin receives water from upland and an inflow stream; no outlet channel.
Palustrine; unconfined slopes and hollows	Overflow hollow	oh	Hollow receives ground water from upslope; drains through outlet channel or watertrack.
nonows	Linked hollow	lh	Hollow receives water from upland and an inflow stream; excess water flows out through an outflow stream or watertrack. Includes gullies with slow streams where there is little sedimentation or erosion.
	Blanket slope	bs	Occurs in subdued topography where basin types are not defineable.
	Toe slope	ts	Occurs on toe slope positions not confined by basin or hollow; water received from upslope, sheet or channelled flow
	Lobe slope	ls	Peatlands on slopes with a downslope edge elevated above the upland in the form of a lobe; water received from upslope, sheet or channelled flow.
Fluvial	Alluvial	a	Associated with low gradient streams where floodplain building processes predominate; flooding and subsequent deposition of alluvium leads to extensive floodplains of sandy or silty soils.

System	Element Group	Code	Description
	Transport	t	Associated with moderate gradient streams where neither erosion or deposition forces predominate; floodplain development limited, instream bars and gravelly soil common.
	Headwater	h	Associated with high gradient streams where erosive processes predominate; flood plain and bar development limited; cobble, stone or bedrock substrates common

9. Rooting Depth

Rooting depth refers to the depth (cm) from the *ground surface*, which is the top of the uppermost soil horizon including organic horizons (e.g., Fm1), down to the bottom of the rooting zone (i.e., the level at which the majority of roots stop; for example, the end of "plentiful" and beginning of "few" rooting abundance).

10. Rooting Zone Particle Size

The particle size distribution within the mineral portion of the rooting zone is used to make broad interpretations. After determining rooting depth, estimate the rooting zone particle-size class as a weighted average of the mineral horizons within the rooting zone (Figure 2.2, Table 2.12). Where rooting is restricted to the organic horizons, use the organic material codes in Table 2.12. For the most part, class names and definitions have been modified from the Canadian System of Soil Classification family particle size criteria. Rooting zone classes are greatly simplified and use only percent coarse fragments

(≥ 2 mm) by volume, and texture class sizes by percent weight for sand (.05 to < 2 mm), silt (< .05 to .002 mm), and clay (< .002). Two different classes can be entered on the data form if strongly contrasting size classes occur (e.g. CLS/FC= coarse-loamy over fine-clayey), however ranges of rooting zone particle-size classes can not be shown.

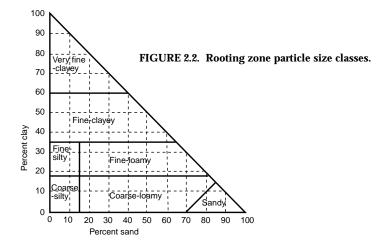


TABLE 2.12. Rooting zone particle size classes

Code	e Class ^a	Definitions
Coar	se fragments \geq 70%:	
F	Fragmental	Particles < 2 mm of various textures

Coarse fragments ≥ 35 and less than 70%	:
--	----------

Very-fine-clayey

VFC

Coarse	tragments \geq 35 and less the	nan 70%:
SS	Sandy-skeletal	Particles < 2 mm sandy
CLS	Coarse-loamy-skeletal	Particles < 2 mm coarse-loamy
FLS	Fine-loamy-skeletal	Particles < 2 mm fine-loamy
SIS	Silty-skeletal	Particles < 2 mm fine-silty or coarse-silty
CS	Clayey-skeletal	Particles < 2 mm clayey

Coarse fragments < 35 %				
S	Sandy	Organ	ic Material Codes:	
CL	Coarse-loamy	F	Fibric	
FL	Fine-loamy	M	Mesic	
CSI	Coarse-silty	Н	Humic	
FSI	Fine-silty	W	Woody	
FC	Fine-clayey			

^a Refer to triangle in Figure 2.2 for proportion of sand and clay in the fine particle sizes (< 2 mm) of these classes.

11. Root Restricting Layer

If present, enter a code for the type of root restricting layer (Table 2.13), and the depth (cm) from the *ground surface* down to the top of the layer.

TABLE 2.13. Codes for root restricting layers

Code	Description
C	Strongly cemented horizon
P	Clay pan or restriction due to fines
K	Compacted morainal material
L	Lithic contact
W	Excessive moisture; this refers to the depth where the roots are being restricted by excessive moisture, but does not require the presence of free water at the time of sampling
X	Excessive accumulations of chemicals within the profile which inhibit root growth (i.e., ${\rm CaCO_3})$
Z	Permafrost; characterized by temperatures never exceeding 0°C, ice cementation, ice lenses, or massive ice.

12. Water Source

Ν

The most influential source of water on a site (determined by a qualitative assessment) is recorded using the codes in Table 2.14.

TABLE 2.14. Water source codes

No root restriction evident.

Code	Water Source
P	Precipitation
\mathbf{G}	Groundwater
S	Snowmelt (prolonged through the growing season)
F	Stream sub-irrigation and flooding
M	Mineral spring
T	Tidal, freshwater
E	Tidal, saltwater
Z	Permafrost

13. Seepage Water Depth

If seepage is present at the time of sampling, record the depth (cm) from the *ground surface* to the level of temporary or permanent subsurface water flow. Enter "NP" if not present.

14. Drainage Class and Soil Moisture Subclass

Drainage class describes the speed and extent to which water is removed from a mineral soil in relation to additions (Table 2.15.) s

TABLE 2.15. Drainage classes and codes

Code	Class	Description
x	Very rapidly drained	Water is removed from the soil very rapidly in relation to supply. Water source is precipitation and available water storage capacity following precipitation is essentially nil. Soils are typically fragmental or skeletal, shallow, or both.
r	Rapidly drained	Water is removed from the soil rapidly in relation to supply. Excess water flows downward if underlying material is pervious. Subsurface flow may occur on steep gradients during heavy rainfall. Water source is precipitation. Soils are generally coarse textured.
w	Well drained	Water is removed from the soil readily, but not rapidly. Excess water flows downward readily into underlying pervious material or laterally as subsurface flow. Water source is precipitation. On slopes, subsurface flow may occur for short durations, but additions are equalled by losses. Soils are generally intermediate in texture and lack restricting layers.
m	Moderately well drained	Water is removed from the soil somewhat slowly in relation to supply because of imperviousness or lack of gradient. Precipitation is the dominant water source in medium- to finetextured soils; precipitation and significant additions by subsurface flow are necessary in coarse-textured soils.

Code	Class	Description	
i	Imperfectly drained	Water is removed from the soil sufficiently slowly in relation to supply to keep the soil wet for a significant part of the growing season. Excess water moves slowly downward if precipitation is the major source. If subsurface water or groundwater (or both) is the main source, the flow rate may vary but the soil remains wet for a significant part of the growing season. Precipitation is the main source if available water storage capacity is high; contribution by subsurface or groundwater flow (or both) increases as available water storage capacity decreases. Soils generally have a wide range of texture, and some mottling is common.	
p	Poorly drained	Water is removed so slowly in relation to supply that the soil remains wet for much of the time that it is not frozen. Excess water is evident in the soil for a large part of the time. Subsurface or groundwater flow (or both), in addition to precipitation, are the main water sources. A perched water table may be present. Soils are generally mottled and/or gleyed.	
v	Very poorly drained	Water is removed from the soil so slowly that the water table remains at or near the surface for most of the time the soil is not frozen. Groundwater flow and subsurface flow are the major water sources. Precipitation is less important, except where there is a perched water table with precipitation exceeding evapotranspiration. Typically associated with wetlands. For organic wetlands, also evaluate the soil moisture subclass, and when entering on the form, separate from drainage by a slash. For example, v/ac.	

Soil moisture subclasses (applied to organic soil order only) indicate the length of time the soil is saturated (Table 2.16). Record the subclass code in the "drainage" information field.

TABLE 2.16. Soil moisture subclasses and codes

Code	Moisture subclass	Description	Saturation period (mo.)	Moist period (mo.)
aq	Aqueous	Free surface water	11.5–12	< 0.5
pa	Peraquic	Soil saturated for very long periods	> 10	< 2
ac	Aquic	Soil saturated for moderately long periods	4–10	2-8
sa	Subaquic	Soil saturated for short periods	< 4	8–11.5
ph	Perhumid	No significant water deficits in growing season	< 2	8–11.5
hu	Humid	Very slight deficits in growing season	< 0.5	> 11.5

15. Flooding Regime

Flooding is defined as immersion of substrate by water (i.e., saturated peats not covered by surface water are *not* considered flooded). Flooding regimes may be indicated by one- or two-letter codes as appropriate for yearly frequency and seasonal duration (Table 2.17 and 2.18). A range of flooding regimes may also be entered (e.g., OB = occasional brief flooding and FT-AM = frequent temporary flooding to annual moderate flooding).

TABLE 2.17. Codes for frequency of flooding

Code	Description	
A	Annual flood (at least once per year)	
F	Frequent flooding (every 2–5 years)	
0	Occasional flooding (> 5-year interval between flooding)	
R	Rare flood (only during extreme events)	
X	Never flooded	

TABLE 2.18. Codes for duration and timing of flooding

Code	Description
W	Winter flooding
P	Permanent flooding during growing season
E	Extended flooding (exposed $<$ 1 month during last part of growing season)
M	Moderate flooding (flooded for 1–3 months; exposed substrate for prolonged periods of the growing season)
T	Temporary flooding (7–30 days during the growing season)
В	Brief flooding (< 7 days during the growing season)
D	Diurnal flooding

Organic Horizons and Layers

The soil horizon and layer definitions and methods for field description that follow are taken or modified from Soil Classification Working Group (1998), Green et al. (1993), and Luttmerding et al. (1990).

16. Horizon/Layer

Record the organic horizon or layer designation. Two groups of master organic horizons are recognized: L, F, H ("upland") horizons, and O ("wetland") horizons. All contain > 17% organic C by mass. These two groups are differentiated primarily by the features outlined in Table 2.19.

TABLE 2.19. Guidelines for differentiating between upland and wetland organic horizons

Property	L, F, and H horizons	O horizons
Physiography	Sloping to level	Depression to gently sloping
Soil drainage	Very rapid to imperfect	Poor to very poor

Property	L, F, and H horizons	O horizons	
Water table	Absent in organic horizons (may fluctuate in response to water input)	At or near ground surface for significant duration during the frost-free period	
Origin of materials	Organic residues from plant communities typically associated with soil moisture regimes 0-6	Organic residues from plant communities typically associated with soil moisture regimes 7–8	

Codes for master organic horizons:

- L An upland horizon consisting of relatively fresh organic residues that are readily identifiable as to origin.
- F An upland horizon comprised of partly decomposed plant residues in which fragmented plant structures are generally recognizable as to origin.
- H An upland horizon comprised of well-decomposed plant residues in which plant structures are generally not recognizable.
- A wetland organic horizon comprised of materials in varying degrees of decomposition.

Codes for subordinate organic horizons:

- Ln An L horizon composed of newly accreted and essentially unfragmented plant residues.
- Lv An L horizon exhibiting initial decay and strong discoloration.
- Fm An F horizon in which plant residues are aggregated in a matted structure, with a tenacious consistence. Fungal mycelia are clearly a predominant biotic component; some faunal droppings may be present.
- Fz An F horizon in which plant residues are weakly aggregated with a loose or friable consistence. Faunal droppings are typically numerous and easily observed under magnification with a hand lens or binocular microscope; fungal mycelia may be present.

- **Fa** An F horizon in which plant residues are aggregated into a weak to moderate, non-compact matted structure. This is an intergrade between the Fm and Fz horizons, and as such, reflects properties of both, but neither fungal mycelia or faunal droppings predominates.
- **Hh** An H horizon dominated by fine substances with very few, if any, recognizable plant residues.
- Hz An H horizon dominated by fine substances with very few, if any, recognizable plant residues; faunal droppings constitute most of the fabric.
- Hr An H horizon dominated by fine substances, but that also contains recognizable plant residues, usually from fine roots, wood, or bark; typically dark reddish-brown hues, around 2.5YR.
- Of An O horizon comprised largely of poorly decomposed plant residues that are readily identifiable as to origin. It has 40% or more rubbed fibre (i.e., fibre that remains after rubbing a sample about 10 times between thumb and forefinger). These materials are classified in the von Post scale of decomposition (defined below, in Item 18, "Fabric") as class 1 to class 4.
- Om An O horizon comprised of partly decomposed plant residues which are at a stage of decomposition intermediate between Of and Oh horizons. Rubbed fibre usually ranges between 10 and 40% by volume. These materials are classified in the von Post scale of decomposition as class 5 or 6.
- Oh An O horizon of well-decomposed plant residues that for the most part have been transformed into humic materials. The rubbed fibre content is less than 10% by volume. These materials are usually classified in the von Post scale of decomposition as class 7 or higher, and very rarely as class 6.

Oco Coprogenous earth, deposited or modified by aquatic organisms.

Lowercase modifiers:

The following lowercase modifiers may be applied to any organic horizon without restriction.

i An organic horizon that contains intermixed mineral particles finer than 2 mm, with 17–35% organic C by mass. This intermixing of mineral particles with organic materials may result from several different processes (e.g., colluvial, eolian, alluvial, cryoturbation, silvoturbation, and zooturbation).

- p, u, y May also be used with organic horizons, and are defined under "Mineral lowercase modifiers" in Item 24.
- w An organic horizon that contains significant amounts (> 35% of the volume of solids) of coarse woody debris in various stages of decomposition.

Codes for organic layers:

S A distinct ground surface layer of living materials such as bryophytes or "soil crusts."

Limno A layer or layers 5 cm or more thick of sedimentary peat,

Cumulo A 5–30 cm thick layer or layers of mineral material in Organic soils.

Terric An unconsolidated mineral substratum not underlain by organic matter, or one continuous unconsolidated mineral layer more than 30 cm thick in the middle or bottom tiers underlain

by organic matter within a depth of 160 cm.

Lithic Bedrock occurring within 10–160 cm in Organic soils

Hydric A layer of water that extends from a depth of not less than

 $40\ cm$ from the organic surface to a depth of more than $160\ cm.$

Tiers:

Tiers are arbitrary depth intervals used in *classifying* wetland Organic soils, and consist of the surface (0-40 cm), middle (40-120 cm) and bottom tiers (120-160 cm). They are not recorded.

17. Depth

Record the average depths (in centimetres) of the upper and lower boundaries of the horizon being described. The depth of organic horizons in mineral soils are measured upward from zero depth (e.g., L 12–9, Fm 9–2, and Ah 2–0), and in organic soils they are measured downward from the ground surface, or uppermost soil horizon (e.g., S 4–0, Of 0–35, and Om 35–110).

18. Fabric

Describe the structure and consistence of the upland organic horizons and record the von Post classes for wetland horizons. Structure is important in distinguishing between Fm, Fz, and Fa horizons, and the von Post scale of decomposition helps to distinguish the Of, Om, and Oh horizons.

Structure:

Describe structure according to the *degree* and *kind* of the macromorphological aggregation of the material within a horizon. Record the structure "degree" code (Table 2.20) in the first column and the "kind" code (Table 2.21) in the second column.

TABLE 2.20. Degree of aggregation codes

Code	Class	Description
W	Weak	Disaggregated materials are dominant; < 20% distinctly aggregated
M	Moderate	Some disaggregated materials are found; 20-60% distinctly aggregated
S	Strong	Aggregated materials are dominant; most material conforms to the same arrangement; > 60% distinctly aggregated

TABLE 2.21. Kind of aggregation codes

Code	Class	Description			
SP	Single particle	An incoherent mass of individual particles with no aggregation			
BK	Blocky	Faces rectangular and flattened; vertices angular			
GR	Granular	Spheroidal and characterized by rounded or subrounded vertices			
NM	Non-compact matted	Materials arranged along horizontal planes with no compaction			
CM	Compact matted	Materials arranged along horizontal planes with evident compaction			
ER	Erect	Materials arranged vertically			
RC	Recumbent	Materials arranged in recumbent (reclining) position			
MA	Massive	A coherent mass showing no evidence of aggregation			

von Post scale of decomposition:

Squeeze a sample of the O horizon and observe the colour of the solution that is squeezed out between the fingers, the nature of the fibre, and the proportion of the original sample that remains in the hand. Record the class (Table 2.22).

TABLE 2.22. von Post scale of decomposition classes

Code/Class	Description	
1	Undecomposed; plant structure unaltered; yields only clear water coloured light yellow brown.	
2	Almost undecomposed; plant structure distinct; yields only clear water coloured light yellow brown.	
3	Very weakly decomposed; plant structure distinct; yields distinctly turbid brown water, no peat substance passes between the fingers, residue not mushy.	
4	Weakly decomposed; plant structure distinct; yields strongly turbid water, no peat substance escapes between the fingers, residue rather mushy.	
5	Moderately decomposed; plant structure evident, but becoming indistinct; yields much turbid brown water, some peat escapes between the fingers, residue very mushy.	
6	Strongly decomposed; plant structure somewhat indistinct, but more evident in the squeezed residue than in the undisturbed peat; about one-third of the peat escapes between the fingers, residue strongly mushy.	
7	Strongly decomposed; plant structure indistinct, but recognizable; about one-half of the peat escapes between the fingers.	
8	Very strongly decomposed; plant structure very indistinct; about two-thirds of the peat escapes between the fingers, residue almost entirely resistant remnants such as root fibres and wood.	
9	Almost completely decomposed; plant structure almost unrecognizable; nearly all the peat escapes between the fingers.	
10	Completely decomposed; plant structure unrecognizable; all the peat escapes between the fingers.	

19. Mycelial Abundance

In most cases, fungal presence is indicated by masses of hyphae called mycelia. While individual hyphae are generally too small to be seen, the mycelial mass is usually visible. Determining mycelial abundance helps to distinguish the Fm, Fz, and Fa horizons, and therefore the humus form classification. Describe fungal mycelia by noting their abundance class as indicated in Table 2.23.

TABLE 2.23. Mycelial abundance classes and codes

Code	Class	Description
X	None	Fungal mycelia are not visible
F	Few	Fungal mycelia are occasionally present, but are scattered and not easily observed
C	Common	Fungal mycelia are commonly observed
A	Abundant	Fungal mycelia are observed continuously throughout the horizon, often "matting" materials together and creating a "felty" tactility

20. Fecal Abundance

The presence of soil fauna may be observed directly, or indirectly by the presence of fecal droppings or casts. Determining fecal abundance helps to distinguish the Fm, Fz, and Fa horizons, and therefore the humus form classification. Describe the presence of soil fauna by noting their abundance class as indicated in Table 2.24.

TABLE 2.24. Fecal abundance classes and codes

Code	Class	Description
X	None	No feces or fauna observed
F	Few	Fecal droppings or fauna occasionally observed, but scattered
C	Common	Droppings or fauna commonly observed
A	Abundant	Droppings or fauna frequently observed (droppings in relatively large numbers throughout the horizon)

21. Roots

Since root distribution in organic horizons differs substantially from that in mineral soils, the abundance and size classes and the reference unit areas are somewhat different from those used for mineral horizons (Table 2.25). Record the most abundant size first; secondary roots can be recorded by using a slash (/) in the columns as shown below:

Example: Abundant fine and plentiful medium roots.

ROOTS			
AB.	SIZE		
A/P	F/M		

TABLE 2.25. Root abundance and size classes and codes

Size class	v. fine	fine	medium	coarse	very coarse
Code	V	F	M	C	K
Size (mm)	< 1	1-2	3-5	6 - 15	> 15

Abundance code	Reference area				
and class	—— 25	cm² —	-	- 100 cm ²	
X None	0	0	0	0	0
F Few	$< 10^{a}$	< 10	1	1	1
P Plentiful	10-50	10 - 50	2-10	2-5	2-5
A Abundant	> 50	> 50	> 10	> 5	> 5

a Values observed in reference area represent number of roots of size class

22. pH

Record pH, noting the method of measurement in the column header (e.g., pH/3 for Hellige-Truog) (Table 2.26), and the determined values for each horizon to one decimal place.

TABLE 2.26. Codes for methods of pH measurement

Code	Method	Code	Method
1	Bromothymol blue	6	pH meter (0.1 M CaCl ₂)
2	Cresol red	7	Phenol red
3	Hellige-Truog	8	Soiltex
4	Lamotte-Morgan	9	Thymol blue
5	pH meter (H ₂ O)	10	pHydrion
5a	pH meter for ground	11	Litmus paper
	water sample		

23. Comments Section

Record any observations or measurements that are unique, unconforming, or could be of particular significance to the study, classification, or management interpretations. Examples include: consistence, character, faunal species, colour of mycelium, percentage of decaying wood, presence of charcoal, and disturbance history. When coding a property, be sure to note the property being described.

Consistence:

This describes the nature and strength of forces holding materials together. It is determined by the kind of deformation or rupture that occurs when pressure is applied and then released. Use the codes in Table 2.27 to describe consistency.

TABLE 2.27. Consistency classes and codes

Code	Class	Description
LO	Loose	Material has no consistence
FR	Friable	Material crumbles easily under gentle pressure
FM	Firm	Material can be crushed under moderate pressure; resistance is noticeable
PL	Pliable	Material is soft and plastic
RE	Resilient	Material is springy or elastic; assumes its original shape after pressure is released
TE	Tenacious	Material is cohesive and not easily pulled apart

Character:

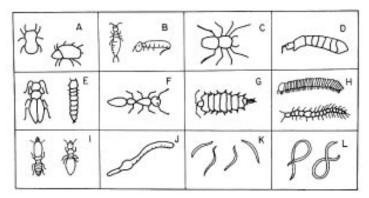
This describes tactile qualities, particulate shapes, and other noteworthy qualities of materials in organic horizons. Determining the character requires a qualitative examination of the fabric. Use the codes in Table 2.28 to describe character.

TABLE 2.28. Character classes and codes

Code	Class	Description	
MS	Mushy	Soft and spongy tactility; materials wet or saturated	
MK	Mucky	Smooth and sticky tactility; materials usually wet; silt- and clay-sized mineral particles usually present	
GR	Greasy	Smooth and greasy tactility; materials easily workable when moist; fine mineral particles are usually absent	
GT	Gritty	Rough tactility produced by mineral granules or coarse fragments	
LF	Leafy	Tactility of materials produced by deciduous foliage showing a shingle-like layering (banded structure)	
GA	Grassy	Tactility of materials produced by graminoid remains	
MO	Mossy	Tactility produced by bryophytes with more or less preserved vegetative structures	
AC	Acerose	Tactility produced by particles having a tip, such as the needles of conifers	
FE	Felty	Tactility produced by abundant fungal mycelia	
FI	Fibrous	Tactility produced by an abundance of fibrous plant residues which do not break down when rubbed between fingers (i.e., fine roots)	
LG	Ligneous	Tactility produced by coniferous or deciduous wood fibres	
CR	Crusty	Hard and brittle tactility of dry or desiccated materials	

Fauna:

When describing soil fauna, use the name (Figure 2.3), e.g., few earthworms, several nematodes.



Label	Fauna	Label	Fauna
Α	Mites (Acarina)	G	Woodlice (Isopoda)
В	Springtails	Н	Centipedes and millipedes
	(Collembola)		(Myriapoda)
C	Spiders (Araneida)	I	Termites (Isoptera)
D	Fly larvae (Diptera)	J	Earthworms (Lumbricida)
E	Beetles and larvae (Coleoptera)	K	Potworms (Enchytraeida)
F	Ants (Hymenoptera)	L	Nematodes (Nematoda)

FIGURE 2.3. Major kinds of soil fauna.

Mineral Horizons/Layers

The soil horizon and layer definitions and methods for field description that follow are taken or modified from Agriculture Canada Expert Committee on Soil Survey (1997), Green et al. (1993), and Luttmerding et al. (1990).

24. Horizon/Layer

Record the mineral horizon or layer designation followed by lowercase modifiers, e.g., Btg.

Codes for major horizons:

- A Mineral horizon, containing < 17% organic C by mass, that has formed at or near the soil surface in the zone of leaching or eluviation of organic materials in solution or suspension, or of maximum *in situ* accumulation of organic matter, or both.
- **B** Mineral horizon characterized by enrichment in organic matter, sequioxides, or clay; or by the development of soil structure; or by a change of colour denoting hydrolysis, reduction, or oxidation.
- C Mineral horizon comparatively unaffected by the pedogenic processes operative in the A and B horizons, except the process of gleying (Cg), and the accumulation of calcium and magnesium carbonates (Cca) and more soluble salts (Cs, Csa).

Codes for layers:

- R Consolidated bedrock layer which is too hard to break with the hands.
- W Layer of water in Gleysolic, Organic, or Cryosolic soils.

Lowercase modifiers:

- b Buried soil horizon.
- ca Horizon > 10 cm thick of secondary carbonate enrichment in which the concentration of lime exceeds that in the unenriched parent material.
- cc Irreversibly cemented concretions.
- Horizon characterized by the eluviation of clay, Fe, Al, or organic matter alone or in combination.

f Horizon enriched with amorphous material, principally Al and Fe combined with organic matter. It must have a hue of 7.5YR or redder, or its hue must be 10YR near the upper boundary and becomes yellower with depth. When moist the chroma is higher than three or the value is three or less. It is used primarily with the Bf, Bhf, Bfg, and Bgf codes. The following f horizons are differentiated on the basis of the organic C content:

Bf 0.5–5% organic C Bhf > 5% organic C

- g Horizon characterized by gray colours, or prominent mottling, or both, which indicates of permanent or periodic intense reduction. Chromas of the matrix are generally one or less. It is used with the Aeg, Bg, Bgg, Bgf, Bhfg, Btg, Cg, Ckg codes, and others. When used with the Ae, Bf, Bhf, and Bt codes, the limits set for the other modifiers must be met. The Bgf horizons are usually prominently mottled; more than half of the soil material occurs as mottles of high chroma. The Bgf horizons occur in Fera Gleysols and Fera Humic Gleysols and possibly below the Bfg of gleyed Podzols.
- h Horizon enriched with organic matter. It is used with the Ah, Ahe, Bh, and Bhf codes.
 - Ah An A horizon enriched with humified organic matter; at least one colour value unit lower that the underlying horizon, or 0.5% more organic C than the C horizon or both.
 - **Ahe** An Ah horizon that has undergone eluviation as evidenced by streaks and splotches of different shades of gray, and often by plated structure.
 - **Bh** Contains > 1% organic C with less than 0.3% pyrophosphate-extractable Fe [Fe(p)] and a ratio of C : Fe(p) of 20 or more (*very* rare in British Columbia).

Bhf - Defined under f above.

- j Used with e, f, g, n, and t to denote an expression of, but failure to meet, the specified limits of the letter code it modifies. It is placed to the right of the letter it modifies.
- k Denotes the presence of carbonate as indicated by visible effervescence when a dilute HCl solution is added.

m Horizon slightly altered by hydrolysis, oxidation, or solution, or all three to give a change in colour or structure, or both. It is used with the Bm, Bmgj, Bmk, and Bms codes.

It has:

- 1. Evidence of one of or more of the following:
 - higher chromas and redder hues than the underlying horizons:
 - enrichment or complete removal of carbonates either as Bmk or Bm: and/or
 - · change in structure from that of the original material.
- 2. Illuviation too slight to meet requirements of a Bt or podzolic B.
- 3. No cementation or induration and lacks a brittle consistence when moist.
- n Horizon with distinctive prismatic or columnar structure, dark coatings on ped surfaces, and hard to very hard consistence when dry; the exchangeable Ca to exchangeable Na is 10 or less. It is used with Bn or Bnt codes.
- p Horizon disturbed by human activities, such as cultivation, logging, and habitation.
- s Horizon with salts, including gypsum, which may be detected as crystal or veins, or as surface crusts of salt crystals. It is used with any combination of horizon codes.
- sa Horizon > 10 cm thick with secondary enrichment of salts more soluble than Ca and Mg carbonates; the concentration of salts exceeds that in the unenriched parent material.
- t An illuvial horizon enriched with silicate clay. It is used with the Bt, Btg, and Bnt codes and may be modified by j. To use Bt:
 - The horizon must be at least 5 cm thick.
 - If any part of an the eluvial horizon has < 15% total clay in the fine fraction (< 2 mm), the Bt horizon must contain at least 3% more clay and if > 40% total clay, then it must contain at least 8% more clay. If the eluvial horizon has > 15% and < 40% clay in the fine fraction, then the ratio of the clay in the Bt to that of the eluvial horizon must be 1.2 or more (e.g., Ae 25% clay; Bt at least 30% clay).
 - In massive soils, there should be oriented clay in pores and as bridges between sand grains.
 - If peds are present, clay films (skins) should be visible on ped surfaces and in pores.

- u Horizon that is markedly disrupted by physical (e.g., blowdown of trees, mass movement, etc.) or faunal processes (e.g., burrowing animals), but not from cryoturbation.
- x Horizon of fragipan character; loamy subsurface horizon of high bulk density and very low organic matter. When dry, it is hard and seems to be cemented; when moist is has moderate to weak brittleness. Airdried clods slake (crumble) in water.
- y Horizon affected by cryoturbation. It is used with any combination of horizon codes.
- **z** A frozen layer, it may be used with any horizon or layer code.

Mineral diagnostic horizons:

Chernozemic A

- · At least 10 cm thick;
- Colour value darker than 5.5 dry and 3.5 moist, chroma is lower than 3.5 moist;
- Organic C content 1-17% and C:N ratio < 17;
- Structure, when dry, is neither massive and hard, nor single grained; and
- Mean annual soil temperature of 0° C or higher and a soil moisture regime subclass drier than humid.

Duric horizon

A strongly cemented horizon that does not satisfy the criteria of a podzolic B horizon. Usually has an abrupt upper boundary and a diffuse lower boundary. Air-dried clods do not hydrate in water, and moist clods at least 3 cm thick usually can not be broken in the hands.

Fragipan horizon

See definition of "x" above.

Ortstein horizon

A strongly cemented Bh, Bhf, of Bf horizon at least 3 cm thick which occurs in more than one-third of the exposed pedon. Generally reddish brown to very dark reddish brown.

Placic horizon

A thin layer (commonly 5 mm or less thick) or a series of thin layers that are irregular or involuted, hard, impervious, often vitreous, and dark reddish brown to black.

Podzolic B horizon (field criteria only)

- · At least 10 cm thick;
- Moist crushed color: hue is 7.5YR or redder or 10YR near the upper boundary and becomes yellower with depth. The chroma is higher than 3 or the value is 3 or less;
- Accumulation of amorphous material is indicated by brown to black coatings on some mineral grains or brown to black microaggregates.
 Silty feel when the material is rubbed wet, unless cemented; and
- · Texture coarser than clay.

Solonetzic B horizon

The term includes both Bn and Bnt horizons.

Lithic layer

Bedrock (R) below a depth of 10 cm. The upper surface of a lithic layer is a lithic contact.

25. Depth

Record the average depths (in centimetres) of the upper and lower boundaries of the soil horizon being described, e.g., Ah 0-5, Bm 5-20. The top of the uppermost mineral horizon is considered as zero depth.

26. Colour

Soil colour is determined by comparison with Munsell Colour Charts . The notation for a specific colour should be in the order of hue, value/chroma. Intermediate hues, values, and chromas may be expressed with the use of decimals

ASP - Colour Aspect

The colour of a soil varies with its moisture content and physical state. Record the aspect of the Munsell colour notation using the codes in Table 2.29.

TABLE 2.29. Colour aspects and codes for mineral soils

Code	Aspect	Description
1 2	Matrix moist Matrix dry	Matrix is the main soil constituent or material that encloses other soil features, for example, peds. This colour aspect is reserved for structureless soils or weakly structured soils whose peds crumble upon handling.
3 4	Exped moist Exped dry	Colour of ped surfaces in soils with moderately durable peds which may be broken open and examined.
5 6	Inped moist Inped dry	Dominant colour of ped interiors in soils with moderately durable peds that may be broken open and examined.
7 8	Crushed moist Crush dry	Soil material is crushed and mixed. Surface of the sample is smoothed to reduce irregularities that affect colour.

27. Texture

Soil texture is defined by the size distribution of primary mineral particles (2 mm diameter or less). The textural classes and codes are determined from the soil texture triangle by estimating the percentage of clay (less than 0.002 mm diameter) and sand (0.05 to < 2.0 mm diameter)(Figure 2.4). See Appendix 2.4 for a key to soil texture (and letter-code descriptions).

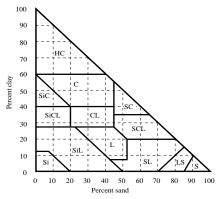


FIGURE 2.4. Soil texture triangle.

28. Percent Coarse Fragments

Estimate the percent coarse fragment (> 2 mm diameter) volume in each size class and record the total percent. Describe the coarse fragment shape using the type codes in Table 2.30.

TABLE 2.30. Size classes and type codes for coarse fragments

	Shape type: R, S, A ^a	Shape type: T
Size Classes	Diameter (cm)	Length (cm)
G - Gravel C - Cobbles S - Stones and boulders	< 7.5 7.5–25 >25	< 15 15–38 > 38

a type codes: R = rounded; S = subrounded and subangular; A = angular; T = thin, flat.

29. Roots

Describe roots by noting their abundance and size (Table 2.31). Record the most abundant size first; secondary roots can be recorded by using a slash (/) in the columns (see example in Item 21).

TABLE 2.31. Root abundance and size classes and codes

Co	t e class de e (mm)	Very fine V < 1	Fine F 1 to 2	Medium M 3 to 5	Coarse C > 5	
	undance code d class None Few	0 < 10 ^a	0 < 10	0	0	
P A	Plentiful Abundant	10–100 > 100	10-100 > 100	2-10 > 10	2-5 > 5	

^a Values represent number of roots of size class observed in reference area of 100 cm².

30. Structure

Record the kind and class of structure (see Table 2.32 below and Figure 2.5). When more than one kind of primary structure is present, record the dominant under structure, and the subordinate in comments.

TABLE 2.32. Codes for kind and class of soil particle structure

		-	
Kind	Clas	ss	Size (mm) ^a
ABK : Angular blocky; peds	VF	very fine angular blocky	< 5
bounded by flattened, rectangu-	F M	fine angular blocky medium angular	5-10 10-20
lar faces intersecting at relatively sharp angles	c VC	blocky coarse angular blocky very coarse angular blocky	20-50 > 50
SBK: Subangular blocky; peds bounded by slightly	VF F	very fine subangular blocky fine subangular	< 5 5–10
rounded, subrectangular faces with vertices ^b of	M	blocky medium subangular blocky	10-20
their intersections mostly subrounded	C	coarse subangular blocky	20-50
	VC	very coarse subangular blocky	> 50
GR: Granular; spheroidal peds bounded by curved or very irregular faces that do not adjoin those of adjacent peds	VF F M C VC	very fine granular fine granular medium granular coarse granular very coarse granular	< 1 1-2 2-5 5-10 > 10
PL: Platy; peds flat or platelike; horizontal planes more or less well developed	VF F M C VC	very fine platy fine platy medium platy coarse platy very coarse platy	< 1 1-2 2-5 5-10 > 10

Kind	Class	Size (mm) ^a
PR: Prismatic; vertical faces of peds well defined and vertices ^b angular (edges sharp); prism tops essentially flat	VF very fine prismatic F fine prismatic M medium prismatic C coarse prismatic VC very coarse prismatic	< 10 10-20 20-50 50-100 > 100
COL: Columnar; vertical edges near top of columns not sharp (vertices ^b subrounded); column tops flat, rounded, or irregular	VF very fine columnar F fine columnar M medium columnar C coarse columnar VC very coarse columnar	< 10 10-20 20-50 50-100 > 100
SGR: single grained	Loose, incoherent mass of individual primary particles, as in sands	
MA: Massive	Amorphous; a coherent mass showing no evidence of any distinct arrangement of soil particles; separates into clusters of particles, not peds	
CDY:	Cloddy; not a structure, used to indicate the condition of some ploughed surfaces.	

^a The size limits refer to measurements in the smallest dimension of platy, prismatic, and columnar peds, and to the largest of the nearly equal dimensions of blocky and granular peds.

b Definition of vertex (plural, vertices): the intersection of two planes of a geometrical

figure.

Grade The degree of distinctness of aggregation of soil particles. If grade of structure is described, record with class code separated by a slash (e.g., S/VC = strong/very coarse).

W = Weak

WM = Weak to moderate

M = Moderate

MS = Moderate to strong

S = Strong

31. pH

Record pH by noting the method of measurement (see Table 2.26 under Item 22) and the determined values to one decimal place.

32. Comments

Record any observations or measurements that are unique, unconforming, or could be of particular significance to the study, classification, or management interpretations. Examples include: colour and description of mottles (see colour section), description of clay films, and porosity.

Mottling:

Described by recording *abundance*, *size*, and *contrast* and *colour* (see Tables 2.33 and 2.34). Use Munsell Colour Charts, defaulting to aspect 7, crushed moist, unless otherwise noted. For example, *FMD 7.5YR mottles* = few, medium, distinct, strong brown (crushed moist) mottles.

TABLE 2.33. Abundance and size codes for mottles

Abundance				Size	
Code	Class	% of exposed surface	Code	Class	Diameter (mm)
F	Few	< 2	F	Fine	< 5
C	Common	2-20	M	Medium	5–15
M	Many	> 20	C	Coarse	> 15

TABLE 2.34. Contrast codes for mottles

Code Description

Faint: Evident only on close examination. Faint mottles commonly have the same hue as the colour to which they are compared and differ by no more than 1 unit of chroma or 2 units of value. Some faint mottles of similar but low chroma and value can differ by 2.5 units of hue.

Code	Description
D	Distinct: Readily seen, but contrast only moderately with the colour to which they are compared. Distinct mottles commonly
	have the same hue as the colour to which they are compared, but differ by 2-4 units of chroma or 3-4 units of value; or differ
	from the colour to which they are compared by 2.5 units of hue, but by no more than 1 unit of chroma or 2 units of value.
P	Prominent: Contrast strongly with the colour to which they are compared. Prominent mottles are commonly the most obvious colour feature in a soil. Prominent mottles that have medium chroma and value commonly differ from the colour to which they are compared by at least 5 units of hue, if chroma and value are the same; by at least 4 units of value or chroma, if the hue is the same; or by at least 1 unit of chroma or 2 units of value, if hue differs by

Clay films (skins):

2.5 units.

Accumulations of oriented clay translocated from another part of the soil. Clay films are described by recording the *frequency* of occurrence, and estimated *thickness* (see Tables 2.35 and 2.36). Most Bt horizons will exhibit clay films and should be noted. For example, *FMTK clay films* = Few, moderately thick clay films.

TABLE 2.35. Clay film frequency classes

Code	Class	Description
X	None	No clay films present.
F	Few	Clay films cover less than 2% of the total area of the specified surface(s). Patches of film are identifiable, but their frequency is so low that the significance of their presence may be nil or doubtful.
C	Common	Clay films cover 2–20% of the total area of the specified surface(s).
M	Many	Clay films cover 20–80% of the total area of the specified surface(s). They may occur as discrete patches or as a continuous network.
CS	Continuous	Clay films cover more than 80% of the total area of the specified surface(s). Patches of these surfaces may be free of clay films, but the films are essentially continuous.

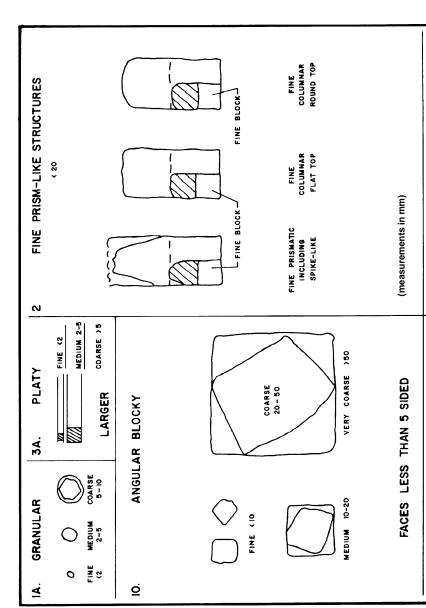


FIGURE 2.5. Diagrammatic representation of soil structure. $\bullet 46 \, \bullet$

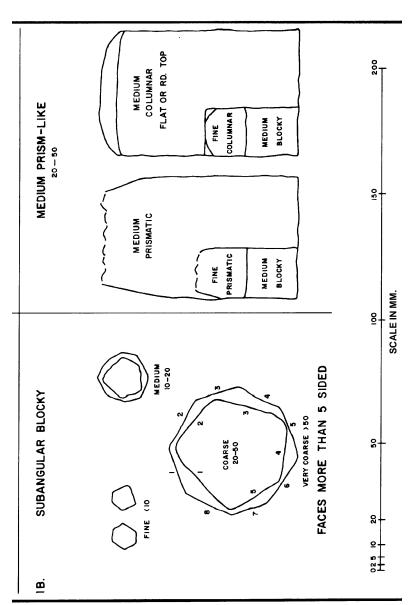


FIGURE 2.5. (continued).

TABLE 2.36. Clay film thickness classes

Code	Class	mm	Description
TN	Thin	< 0.05	Hand lens is needed for identification; visible in cross-section with 10X lens, but not to the unaided eye. If present, fine sand grains protrude through the film or are only thinly coated and are readily apparent.
MTK	Moderately thick	0.05-0.5	Clay films are visible in cross-section to the unaided eye. Fine sand grains are enveloped by the film or their outlines are indistinct. Film surfaces are relatively smooth.
TK	Thick	0.5-1.0	Clay films and their broken edges are readily visible without magnification. Film surfaces are smooth.
VTK	Very thick	> 1.0	Clay films are a striking feature of the morphology

Effervescence:

The bubbling, hissing, or foaming that occurs when a 10% HCl solution is added to a sample of soil. Enter the appropriate code from Table 2.37.

TABLE 2.37. Codes to describe degree of effervescence

Code	Class	Degree of effervescence
X	None	No evidence of effervescence
VW	Very Weak	Few bubbles. (Note: ensure that the crackling sound is from reaction rather than absorption of liquid; compare with water).
W	Weak	Bubbles readily observed
M	Moderate	Bubbles form low foam
S	Strong	Bubbles form thick foam

Horizon porosity:

An estimate of total pore volume that reflects the combined effects of soil structure and density. Record porosity classes for mineral horizons as described in Table 2.38.

TABLE 2.38. Mineral horizon porosity classes

Code	Porosity class	Description
S	Slightly porous	Closely packed structureless soil material; highly compacted material.
M	Moderately porous	Horizons with weak to moderate structure and moderately close packing; closely packed soils with large, well-developed peds.
Н	Highly porous	Horizons that are loosely packed, and/or very well structured with small peds.

33. Profile diagram

Sketch a cross-sectional profile diagram of the horizon boundaries, and add other significant features (relative coarse fragment distribution and size, piping, turbation, seepage, water table, lithic contact, etc.) (see example, Figure 2.6.

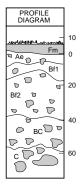


FIGURE 2.6. Example of profile diagram.

34. Notes

Use this section to summarize or describe soil features not otherwise recorded on the form or that are significant to the study, classifications, or management interpretations.

Appendix 2.1 Codes for Soil Orders, Great Groups and Subgroups

Brunisolic Order Melanic Brunisol MB Orthic O.MB Eluviated E.MB Gleyed GL.MB Gleyed Eluviated GLE.MB

Eutric Brunisol EB
Orthic O.EB
Eluviated E.EB
Gleyed GL.EB
Gleved Eluviated GLE.EB

Sombric Brunisol SB
Orthic O.SB
Eluviated E.SB
Duric DU.SB
Gleyed GL.SB
Gleyed Eluviated GLE.SB

Dystric Brunisol DYB
Orthic O.DYB
Eluviated E.DYB
Duric DU.DYB
Gleyed GL.DYB
Gleyed Eluviated GLE.DYB

Chernozemic Order
Brown Chernozem BC
Orthic O.BC
Rego R.BC
Calcareous CA.BC
Eluviated E.BC
Solonetzic SZ.BC
Vertic V.BC
Gleyed GL.BC
Gleyed Rego GLR.BC
Gleyed Calcareous GLA.BC
Gleyed Eluviated GLE.BC
Gleyed Solonetzic GLSZ.BC
Gleyed Vertic GLV.BC

Dark Brown Chernozem DBC
Orthic O.DBC
Rego R.DBC
Calcareous CA.DBC
Eluviated E.DBC
Solonetzic SZ.DBC
Gleyed GL.DBC
Gleyed Rego GLR.DBC
Gleyed Calcareous GLCA.DBC
Gleyed Eluviated GLE.DBC
Gleyed Solonetzic GLSZ.DBC

Black Chernozem BLC
Orthic O.BLC
Rego R.BLC
Calcareous CA.BLC
Eluviated E.BLC
Solonetzic SZ.BLC
Vertic V.BLC
Gleyed GL.BLC
Gleyed Rego GLR.BLC
Gleyed Calcareous GLCA.BLC
Gleyed Eluviated GLE.BLC
Gleyed Solonetzic GLSZ.BLC
Gleyed Vertic GLV.BLC

Dark Gray Chernozem DGC
Orthic O.DGC
Rego R.DGC
Calcareous CA.DGC
Solonetzic SZ.DGC
Vertic V.DGC
Gleyed GL.DGC
Gleyed Rego GLR.DGC
Gleyed Calcareous GLCA.DGC
Gleyed Solonetzic GLSZ.DGC
Gleyed Vertic GLV.DGC

Cryosolic Order Turbic Cryosol TC Orthic Eutric OE.TC Orthic Dystric OD.TC Brunisolic Eutric BRE.TC Brunisolic Dystric BRD.TC Histic Eutric HE.TC Histic Dystric HD.TC Luvisolic L.TC Regosolic R.TC

Gleysolic GL.TC

Static Cryosol SC
Orthic Eutric OE.SC
Orthic Dystric OD.SC
Brunisolic Eutric BRE.SC
Brunisolic Dystric BRD.SC
Histic Eutric HE.SC
Histic Dystric HD.SC
Luvisolic L.SC
Gleysolic Static Cryosol GL.SC
Regosolic Static Cryosol R.SC

Organic Cryosol OC
Fibric FI.OC
Mesic ME.OC
Humic HU.OC
Terric Fibric TFI.OC
Terric Mesic TME.OC
Terric Humic THU.OC
Glacic GC.OC

Gleysolic Order Luvic Gleysol LG Solonetzic SZ.LG Fragic FR.LG Humic HU.LG Fera FE.LG Orthic O.LG

Vertic V.LG

Humic Gleysol HG Solonetzic SZ.HG Fera FE.HG Orthic O.HG Rego **R.HG** Vertic **V.HG**

Gleysol G Solonetzic SZ.G Fera FE.G Orthic O.G Rego R.G Vertic V.G

Luvisolic Order
Gray Brown Luvisol GBL
Orthic O.GBL
Brunisolic BR.GBL
Podzolic PZ.GBL
Vertic V.GBL
Gleyed GL.GBL
Gleyed Brunisolic GLBR.GBL
Gleyed Podzolic GLPZ.GBL
Gleyed Vertic GLV.GBL

Gray Luvisol GL
Orthic O.GL
Dark D.GL
Brunisolic BR.GL
Podzolic PZ.GL
Solonetzic SZ.GL
Fragic FR.GL
Vertic V.GL
Gleyed GL.GL
Gleyed Dark GLD.GL
Gleyed Brunisolic GLBR.GL
Gleyed Podzolic GLPZ.GL
Gleyed Fragic GLFR.GL
Gleyed Fragic GLFR.GL
Gleyed Vertic GLV.GL

Organic Order Fibrisol F Typic TY.F Mesic ME.F Humic HU.F Limnic LM.F Cumulic CU.F

Terric T.F

Terric Mesic TME.F Terric Humic THU.F Hydric HY.F

Mesisol M
Typic TY.M
Fibric FI.M
Humic HU.M
Limnic LM.M
Cumulic CU.M
Terric T.M.
Terric Fibric TFI.M
Terric Humic THU.M
Hydric HY.M

Humisol H
Typic TY.H
Fibric FI.H
Mesic ME.H
Limnic LM.H
Cumulic CU.H
Terric T.H
Terric Fibric TFI.H
Terric Mesic TME.H
Hydric HY.H

Folisol FO Hemic HE.FO Humic HU.FO Lignic LI.FO Histic HI.FO

Podzolic Order Humic Podzol HP Orthic O.HP Ortstein OT.HP Placic P.HP Duric DU.HP Fragic FR.HP

Ferro-Humic Podzol FHP
Orthic O.FHP
Ortstein OT.FHP
Placic P.FHP
Duric DU.FHP

Fragic FR.FHP
Luvisolic LU.FHP
Sombric SM.FHP
Gleyed GL.FHP
Gleyed Ortstein GLOT.FHP
Gleyed Sombric GLSM.FHP

Humo-Ferric Podzol HFP
Orthic O.HFP
Ortstein OT.HFP
Placic P.HFP
Duric DU.HFP
Fragic FR.HFP
Luvisolic LU.HFP
Sombric SM.HFP
Gleyed GL.HFP
Gleyed Sombric GLSM.HFP

Regosolic Order Regosol R Orthic O.R Cumulic CU.R Gleyed GL.R Gleved Cumulic GLCU.R

Humic Regosol HR
Orthic O.HR
Cumulic CU.HR
Gleyed GL.HR
Gleyed Cumulic GLCU.HR

Solonetzic Order
Solonetz SZ
Brown B.SZ
Dark Brown DB.SZ
Black BL.SZ
Alkaline A.SZ
Gleyed Brown GLB.SZ
Gleyed Dark Brown GLDB.SZ
Gleyed Black GLBL.SZ

Solodized Solonetz SS Brown B.SS Dark Brown DB.SS Black BL.SS
Dark Gray DG.SS
Gray G.SS
Gleyed Brown GLB.SS
Gleyed Dark Brown GLDB.SS
Gleyed Black GLBL.SS
Gleyed Dark Gray GLDG.SS
Gleyed Gray GLG.SS

Solod SO
Brown B.SO
Dark Brown DB.SO
Black BL.SO
Dark Gray DG.SO
Gray G.SO
Gleyed Brown GLB.SO
Gleyed Dark Brown GLDB.SO
Gleyed Dark Gray GLDG.SO
Gleyed Dark Gray GLDG.SO
Gleyed Cary GLDG.SO
Gleyed Gray GLG.SO

Vertisolic Vertisol V Orthic O.V Gleyed GL.V Gleysolic GLC.V

Humic Vertisol HV Orthic O.HV Gleyed GL.HV Gleysolic GLC.HV

Appendix 2.2 Key to Soil Orders

Key to Soil Orders (Soil Classification Working Group 1998)

- B. Other soils with:
 - Organic horizons (more than 17% organic C by mass) that extend from the surface to one of the following:
 - A depth of 60 cm or more if the surface layer is fibric material (Of) having a bulk density of < 0.075 g/cm³.
 - A depth of 40 cm or more if the surface layer consists of mesic or humic material (Om or Oh) having a bulk density
 ≥ 0.075 g/cm³.
 - c. A depth of more than 40 cm if composed of folic materials (L, F, and H), or at least 10 cm if a lithic contact or fragmental materials are present. Folic materials must be more than twice the thickness of a mineral soil layer if the mineral layer is less than 20 cm thick.

OR

- One or more mineral horizons or layers within 40 cm of the surface in addition to the organic horizons (O) as follows:
 - a. If a mineral horizon or layer thinner than 40 cm occurs at the surface, the underlying organic horizon or horizons must have a total thickness of at least 40 cm.
 - b. If one or more mineral horizons or layers occur within 40 cm of the surface, the organic material must occupy more than 40 cm of the upper 80 cm of the control section.

......Organic Order

- C. Other soils that have both a vertic horizon and a slickenside horizon, the top of which occurs within 1 m of the surface. ... Vertisolic Order
- E. Other soils that are saturated with water and under reducing conditions either continuously or during some period of the year as indicated either by direct measurements of the water table and the oxidationreduction status, or by any of the following morphological features within 50 cm of the mineral surface:

- For all but red soil materials (hue 5YR or redder and colour fades slowly on dithionite treatment).
 - a. Chromas of 1 or less, without mottles, on ped surfaces or in the matrix if peds are lacking in materials that develop higher chromas under oxidizing conditions.
 - b. Chromas of 2 or less, in hues of 10YR and 7.5YR, on ped surfaces or in the matrix if peds are lacking, accompanied by prominent mottles.
 - c. Chromas of 3 or less, in hues yellower than 10YR, on ped surfaces or in the matrix if peds are lacking, accompanied by prominent mottles.
- 2. Other soils that have a solonetzic B horizon. Solonetzic Order
- G. Other soils that have a chernozemic A horizon and any one of the following:
 - 1. No Ae horizon.
 - A weakly expressed Ae horizon (Aej) with a dry colour value lower than 5.
 - 3. An Ae horizon thinner than an overlying Ah or Ap horizon that does not appear to be eluviated.
- H. Other soils that have a Bt horizon. Luvisolic Order
- I. Other soils that have either Bm, Btj, or Btj horizons at least 5 cm thick, or a Bf horizon less than 10 cm in thickness. Brunisolic Order

Appendix 2.3 Key to Humus Forms

Key to Humus Forms

1a.			o imperfectly drained sites; humus form not saturated for nged periods				
2	a.	Con	nbined thickness of F and H horizons > 2 cm if Ah < 2 cm				
		3a.	> 50)% thi	ickness of F horizon(s) is Fm MORS (R)		
			4a.		aying wood > 35% of organic matter volume in nus form profile		
			4b.		aying wood ≤ 35% of organic matter volume in nus form profile		
				5a.	F horizon > 50% of thickness of F and H horizon		
				5b.	Hh horizon > 50% of thickness of F and H horizons Humimor (UR)		
				5c.	Hr horizon > 50% of thickness of F and H horizons Resimor (RR)		
		3b.	F ho	orizor	n(s) includes Fz and/or Fa MODERS (D)		
			6a.		aying wood > 35% of organic matter volume in nus form profile Lignomoder (LD)		
			6b.		aying wood ≤ 35% of organic matter volume in nus form profile		
				7a.	Fa horizon > 50% of thickness of F horizons; or Fm horizon present Mormoder (RD)		
				7b.	Fz horizon > 50% of thickness of F horizons		
					8a. F and H horizons greater than or equal to thickness of Ah horizon Leptomoder (TD)		
					8b. F and H horizons less than thickness of Ah horizon		

	2b.	Combined thickness of F and H horizons ≤ 2 cm and Ah horizon ≥ 2 cm			
		9a. Rhizogenous Ah horizon formed from decomposition of dense fine roots			
		9b. Zoogenous Ah horizon formed through actions of abundant earthworms Verminull (VL)			
1b.	Poor to very poorly drained sites; humus form saturated for prolonged periods				
	10a.	Combined thickness of F, H, and O horizons ≤ 2 cm and Ah horizon > 2 cm			
	10b.	Combined thickness of F, H, and O horizons > 2 cm if $Ah < 2\ cm$			
		11a. Thickness of F and H horizons \geq O horizons			
		12a. F horizon(s) is Fm Hydromor (YR)			
		12b. F horizon(s) includes Fz and/or Fa			
		11b. Combined thickness of O horizons greater than F and H horizons			
		13a. Of horizon > 50% of thickness of O horizons Fibrimor (FR)			
		13b. Om horizon \geq 50% of thickness of O horizons Mesimor (MR)			
		13c. Oh horizon > 50% of thickness of O horizons			

Appendix 2.4 Key to Soil Texture

Soil texture field tests

Graininess Test Rub the soil between your fingers. If sand is present, it will feel "grainy." Determining whether sand constitutes more or less than 50% of the sample is the first decision in the key.

Moist Cast Test Compress some moist soil by clenching it in your hand. If the soil holds together (i.e., forms a "cast"), then test the durability of the cast by tossing it from hand to hand. The more durable it is, the more clay is present.

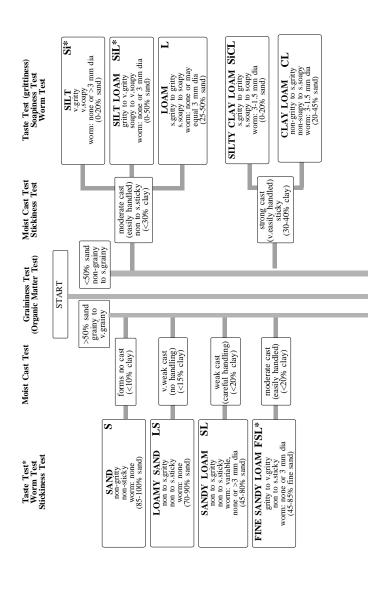
Stickiness Test Moisten the soil thoroughly and compress it between thumb and forefinger. Determine degree of stickiness by noting how strongly the soil adheres to the thumb and forefinger when pressure is released, and how much it stretches. Stickiness increases with clay content.

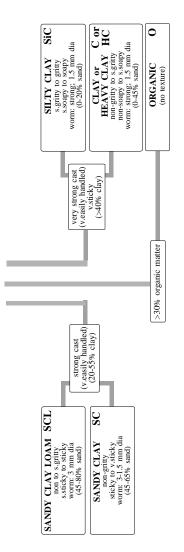
Worm Test Roll some moist soil between the palms of your hands to form the longest, thinnest worm possible. The more clay present, the longer, thinner and more durable the worm will be.

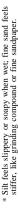
Taste Test (Not recommended due to health concerns) Work a small amount of moist soil between your front teeth. Silt particles are distinguished as fine "grittiness," unlike sand which is distinguished as individual grains (i.e., graininess). Clay has no grittiness.

Well-decomposed organic matter imparts silt-like properties to the soil. However, when subjected to the taste test, it feels non-gritty. It is generally very dark in colour when moist or wet, and stains the hands brown or black. This organic matter is not used as a determinant of soil texture; an estimate of the silt content of humus-enriched mineral soils should be reduced accordingly.

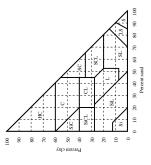
Soapiness Test Work a small amount of wet soil between your thumb and fingers. Silt feels slick and not too sticky (i.e., clay) or grainy (i.e., sand); the greater the dominance of a slick feel, the greater the silt content.











3 VEGETATION

Contents	Page
Vegetation Form	3
Field Procedure	4
Guidelines for Describing Vegetation	5
Vegetation Layers	5
Species Lists	6
Unknown Species	6
Plants Growing on Subdominant Substrates	8
Estimating Percent Cover	8
Recording Percent Cover	10
Blank Columns on the Form	10
Completing the Form	11
1. Species List	11
2. Percent Cover by Layer	11
3. Surveyor	11
4. Plot Number	11
5. Page of	11
6. Trees	11
7. Shrubs	12
8. Herb Layer	12
9. Moss, Lichen, and Seedling Layer	12
10. Additional Species	12
11. Notes	12
Appendix	12
3.1 Coding For Additional Information	13
Arboreal Lichen Loading	13
Available Forage	13
Distribution Codes	13
Utilization Ratings	14
Coding for Vigour	14
Phenology Codes: Vegetative Stages	15
Phenology Codes: Generative Stages	16

Tables

3.1	List of low woody species and species of uncertain	
	life form assigned to the herb layer	7
3.2	Codes for subdominant substrates	8
3.3	Dimensions of various areas in a 400 m² plot	10
Figu	res	
3.1	Stratification of forest stands, shrubs, and trees	6
3.2	Comparison charts for visual estimation of	
	foliage cover	9
3.3	An example of percent coverages in a plot, viewed	
	from above	10

			_	_		1	_	_			_			_						
9F	%	\Box								%										
PAGES		ļ.,	- -	ļ -	_		ļ _			LAYER										
PAG	<u></u>	F + 1	- -	-	-		 	-	-		L -	_	 							
	9											-								
4	MOSS / LICHEN / SEEDLING (D)									ရှု										
0	JS/									ECII										
⊢	핖									IL SF										
PLOT NO.	吕									NO	_									
	oss	0								ADDITIONAL SPECIES	6	(3								
3		Н	-	_				_		¥								_		
)	%	\vdash																		
(S)		 	- -		-		-	-		_		-		-			-			
YOR			- -	† -	-		-	-		-		-		-	-		-			
URVE																				
S																				
НЕN (С]	0																			
/LICF	HERB LAYER (C)																			
] ssow	BL																			
Θ [皇	$ \Theta $																		
TREE THRUB (B) HERB (C) MOSS/LICHEN (D) SURVEYOR(S)	В	H						В												
9 (B)	B2	H						B2												
SHRUE	B1	†	†	† -	-	-	 -	B1	-		-	-	-	-	-	-				
\odot	⋖																_			
TREE	А3									_				ļ _			_			
'ER 'ER	A1 A2		T																	
% COVER BY LAYER	A1	IJ	I	[]																
			- -		-	_	L -													
		-	- -		-	-	<u> </u>												(=)
COMP.								ŝ											1	
a. F	TREES	(9)						SHRUBS	(٢	5									NOTES:	
SPP. LIST	半	<u> </u>								_									ž	
NOITATEDEL																				

FS882 (3) HRE 98/5

Field Procedures

Getting Started

- 1. Locate plot boundaries.
- Assemble description forms, collection bags, and implements (e.g., a knife, small shovel).

Record and Estimate

- 1. Photograph the plot, if required.
- 2. Enter the plot number and surveyors' names.
- 3. Standing at one point in the plot, list all species observed in each layer.
- 4. Traverse the entire plot (or one quadrant at a time) in an increasing spiral or zig-zag pattern, noting each new species.
- 5. Collect unknown species, recording each by a temporary name and plot collection number on the form (e.g., moss 01, hairy grass 02, herb 03, etc.). Mark sample bags and pressing sheets with plot and collection numbers.
- 6. When the list seems complete, begin estimating percent cover. For each layer:
 - estimate total layer cover and enter at top of form;
 - estimate individual species covers for the entire layer and sublayers, if present (i.e., first A, then A1, A2, A3);
 - add up species covers and compare to total species cover and total layer cover; reconcile any discrepancies, remembering that overlap can occur between species and layers.
- 7. Check that all required fields have been completed on the form.

Guidelines for Describing Vegetation

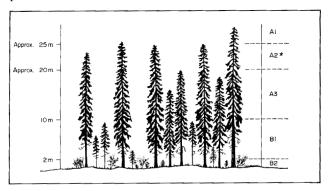
Throughout the process of describing vegetation, observe the following guidelines.

Vegetation Layers

All vegetation is assigned to one of the following layers. Criteria for A and B layers and sub-layers are depicted in Figure 3.1.

- A. The tree layer includes all woody plants greater than 10 m tall. Three sub-layers are recognized:
 - A1 Dominant trees includes the dominant (tallest) trees of the main canopy, which may be veterans of one or more fires (previously classed as A0), or the tallest trees of the same age class as the main canopy; usually a minor portion of the stand composition.
 - A2 Main tree canopy (codominant trees) the main layer of tree cover, composed of trees whose crowns form the upper layer of foliage; typically the major portion of the stand composition.
 - A3 Sub-canopy trees includes trees greater than 10 m high that do not reach the main canopy; may form a distinct secondary canopy; often a mixture of trees of various heights younger than those in the main canopy or may be suppressed trees of the same age; includes "intermediate" and "overtopped" trees (terminology of MOF Resources Inventory Branch).
- B. The *shrub layer* includes all woody plants less than 10 m tall, except low (usually < 15 cm tall) woody or trailing plants which are considered part of the herb layer (see Table 3.1). Established tree regeneration more than two years of age and less than 10 m in height is considered part of the shrub layer. Two sub-layers are recognized:
 - B1 Tall shrub layer includes all woody plants 2-10 m tall, including shrubs and advance tree regeneration and trees in poorly growing stands where the canopy is less than 10 m high.
 - B2 Low shrub layer includes all woody plants less than 2 m high, except low (< 15 cm) woody or trailing plants (see Table 3.1); includes shrubs and established tree regeneration more than two years old and dwarfed or immature specimens of species normally considered in the shrub category (e.g., young Vaccinium membranaceum, or dwarf alpine forms of normally taller shrubs).
- C. The *herb layer* includes all herbaceous species, regardless of height, and some low woody plants less than 15 cm tall (see Table 3.1).

- D. The moss, lichen, liverwort and seedling layer includes all bryophytes, terrestrial lichens, and liverworts, and tree seedlings less than two years old.
- E. The *epiphyte layer* includes all species which grow on other living plants.



^{*}some exceptions for very low growing stands

FIGURE 3.1. Stratification of forest stands, shrubs and trees.

Species Lists

Record the species of all vegetation by layer, either by entering the names in full, or using the 4-3-1 (genus-species-subspecies or variety) code from *British Columbia Plant Species Codes and Selected Attributes* (Meidinger et al. 1998). At a minimum, record all those species growing on the dominant substrate, which will most often be organic matter but on some sites may be rock, decaying wood, or mineral soil.

Certain projects may require only a listing of indicator plants or dominant species growing on the main substrate. In such cases, it is important to indicate that only a partial listing has been made, by checking the appropriate box (PART.) at the top of the form.

Unknown Species

Collect specimens of unknown species for verification, numbering them sequentially within each plot and recording the plot number, temporary name, and collection number on collection bags and pressing sheets. Record percent cover for unknowns on the form using the temporary name and collection number in lieu of species name (e.g., moss 03). These procedures are extremely important if several persons are collecting data, or if a significant time lag occurs between field collection and office verification and coding.

TABLE 3.1. List of low woody species and species of uncertain life form assigned to the herb layer

Andromeda polifolia* Anemone multifida Anemone multifida Apocynum androsaemifolium Apocynum cannabinum Apocynum medium Apocynum sibiricum Apocynum sibiricum Arctostaphylos alpina* Arctostaphylos uva-ursi* Arctostaphylos uva-ursi* Arctostaphylos uva-ursi* Asclepias ovalifolia Asclepias speciosa Asclepias speciosa Asciope tertensiana* Cassiope telleriana* Chamaerhodos erecta Chimaphila umbellata* Corrus canadensis Corrus canadensis Corrus canadensis Corrus suecica Drabaspp. Dryas drummondii* Dryas integrifolia* Rubus pedatus Dryas octopetala* Eriogonum niveum Eriogonum pauciflorum Eriogonum pauciflorum Eriogonum moreale Eriogonum pauciflorum Eriogonum moreale Eriogonum moreale Eriogonum pauciflorum Eriogonum pauciflorum Eriogonum pauciflorum Eriogonum pauciflorum Eriogonum moreale Gaultheria virginiana Galium boreale Gaultheria virginiana Gaultheria virginiana Gaultheria virginiana Gaultheria virginiana Gaultheria virginiana Gaultheria virginiana Eriogonum vicuspidatum Lithospermum ricisum Vaccinium ricisum Vaccinium vicis-idaea*	Latin Name	Latin Name
Anemone multifida Apocynum androsaemifolium Apocynum cannabinum Apocynum medium Lithospermum ruderale Apocynum sibiricum Apocynum sibiricum Luetkea pectinata* Arctostaphylos alpina* Arctostaphylos uva-ursi* Arctostaphylos uva-ursi* Asclepias ovalifolia Asclepias speciosa Asclepias speciosa Cassiope lycopodioides* Cassiope mertensiana* Cassiope etragona* Cassiope etragona* Chimaphila menziesii* Chimaphila menziesii* Cornus suecica Dryas drummondii* Archostaphylos uva-ursi* Asclepias ovalifolia Penstemon davidsonii* Asclepias ovalifolia Penstemon ellipticus* Polysonum ellipticus* Phyllodoce empetriformis* Polygonum cuspidatum Cassiope stelleriana* Polygonum paronychia Chamaerhodos erecta Polygonum polystachyum Polygonum paronychia Polygonum polystachyum Polygonum sachalinense Chimaphila umbellata* Rhododendron lapponicum* Rubus arcticus Cornus suecica Rubus chamaemorus Drabaspp. Rubus lasiococcus Dryas drummondii* Rubus hasaemorus Pryas integrifolia* Rubus pubescens Empetrum nigrum* Rubus pubescens Empetrum nigrum* Rubus pubescens Empetrum nigrum Salix cascadensis* Eriogonum androsaceum Salix arctica* Eriogonum neracleoides Salix stolonifera* Eriogonum noveum Salix reticulata* Eriogonum ovalifolium Salix stolonifera* Eriogonum ovalifolium Saxifraga bronchialis Fragaria vesca Saxifraga oppositifolia Fragaria vesca Saxifraga oppositifolia Fragaria virginiana Saxifraga tricuspidata Galutheria humifusa* Vaccinium ceepitosum* Gaultheria humifusa* Vaccinium ceepitosum* Gaultheria ovatifolia*	Andromeda polifolia*	Kalmia microphylla*
Apocynum cannabinum Apocynum medium Loiseleuria procumbens* Apocynum sibiricum Arctostaphylos alpina* Arctostaphylos uva-ursi* Asclepias ovalifolia Asclepias speciosa Cassiope lycopodioides* Cassiope telleriana* Chamaerhodos erecta Polygonum polystachyum Chimaphila umbellata* Rubus rateica Corrus suecica Drabaspp. Rubus lasiococcus Dryas drummondii* Rubus padatus Dryas integrifolia* Rubus gratius Eriogonum narosaceum Eriogonum narosilorum Eriogonum narosilorum Eriogonum narosilorum Eriogonum narosilorum Eriogonum narosilorum Saxifraga tricuspidata Eriogonum numbellatum Saxifraga tricuspidata Eriogonum numbellatum Eriogonum numbellatum Saxifraga cespitosa Fragaria virginiana Galutheria hispidula* Gaultheria hispidula* Vaccinium vocatifolia* Vaccinium vocatifolia* Vaccinium scoparium* Caultheria hispidula* Vaccinium vocatifolia* Vaccinium vocatifolia* Vaccinium vocatifolia* Vaccinium visis-idaea* Vaccinium visis-idaea* Vaccinium votifolia* Vaccinium vocatifolia* Vaccinium votifoliar Vaccinium vocatifolia* Vaccinium votifoliar Vaccinium vocatifolia* Vaccinium votifoliar Vaccinium votifoliar Vaccinium vocatifolia* Vaccinium votifoliar Vaccinium vocatifolia*		1 5
Apocynum cannabinum Apocynum medium Loiseleuria procumbens* Apocynum sibiricum Arctostaphylos alpina* Arctostaphylos uva-ursi* Asclepias ovalifolia Asclepias speciosa Cassiope lycopodioides* Cassiope telleriana* Chamaerhodos erecta Polygonum polystachyum Chimaphila umbellata* Rubus rateica Corrus suecica Drabaspp. Rubus lasiococcus Dryas drummondii* Rubus padatus Dryas integrifolia* Rubus gratius Eriogonum narosaceum Eriogonum narosilorum Eriogonum narosilorum Eriogonum narosilorum Eriogonum narosilorum Eriogonum narosilorum Saxifraga tricuspidata Eriogonum numbellatum Saxifraga tricuspidata Eriogonum numbellatum Eriogonum numbellatum Saxifraga cespitosa Fragaria virginiana Galutheria hispidula* Gaultheria hispidula* Vaccinium vocatifolia* Vaccinium vocatifolia* Vaccinium scoparium* Caultheria hispidula* Vaccinium vocatifolia* Vaccinium vocatifolia* Vaccinium vocatifolia* Vaccinium visis-idaea* Vaccinium visis-idaea* Vaccinium votifolia* Vaccinium vocatifolia* Vaccinium votifoliar Vaccinium vocatifolia* Vaccinium votifoliar Vaccinium vocatifolia* Vaccinium votifoliar Vaccinium votifoliar Vaccinium vocatifolia* Vaccinium votifoliar Vaccinium vocatifolia*	Apocynum androsaemifolium	Lithospermum incisum
Apocynum medium Apocynum sibiricum Luetkea pectinata* Arctostaphylos alpina* Arctostaphylos uva-ursi* Oxycoccus oxycoccos* Aruncus dioicus Asclepias ovalifolia Asclepias speciosa Asclepias perintensiana* Cassiope lycopodioides* Phyllodoce empetriformis* Cassiope mertensiana* Phyllodoce glanduliflora* Cassiope tetragona* Polygonum cuspidatum Cassiope tetragona* Chamaerhodos erecta Polygonum polystachyum Chimaphila menziesi* Polygonum sachalinense Chimaphila umbellata* Rhododendron lapponicum* Cornus canadensis Cornus suecica Drabaspp. Rubus lasiococcus Dryas drummondii* Rubus nivalis* Dryas integrifolia* Rubus pubescens Empetrum nigrum* Rubus ursinus* Eriogonum nadrosaceum Eriogonum niveum Eriogonum nevalifolium Eriogonum numbellatum Frageria chiloensis Frageria vesca Saxifraga lagellaris Frageria virginiana Galium boreale Gaultheria hispidula* Vaccinium votifolius Faultis-idaea* Vaccinium vitis-idaea* Galltheria ovatifolia* Vaccinium vitis-idaea* Vaccinium vitis-idaea*	1 0	•
Apocynum sibiricum Arctostaphylos alpina* Arctostaphylos uva-ursi* Arctostaphylos uva-ursi* Arctostaphylos uva-ursi* Arctostaphylos uva-ursi* Arctostaphylos uva-ursi* Asclepias ovalifolia Asclepias ovalifolia Penstemon davidsonii* Asclepias speciosa Phlox caespitosa Phyllodoce empetriformis* Cassiope lycopodioides* Phyllodoce empetriformis* Cassiope stelleriana* Polygonum cuspidatum Cassiope stelleriana* Polygonum paronychia Chamaerhodos erecta Polygonum paronychia Chamaerhodos erecta Polygonum paronychia Chimaphila umbellata* Chimaphila umbellata* Rhododendron lapponicum* Cornus canadensis Rubus arcticus Cornus suecica Rubus chamaemorus Dryas drummondii* Rubus nivalis* Dryas drummondii* Rubus pedatus Dryas octopetala* Rubus pedatus Eriogonum androsaceum Salix cascadensis* Eriogonum heracleoides Salix polaris* Eriogonum heracleoides Salix reticulata* Eriogonum niveum Salix reticulata* Eriogonum niveum Salix reticulata* Eriogonum ovalifolium Saxifraga bronchialis Eriogonum umbellatum Frageria chiloensis Saxifraga flagellaris Fragaria vesca Saxifraga oppositifolia Fragaria virginiana Saxifraga tricuspidata Gallum boreale Sibbaldia procumbens Gaultheria hispidula* Vaccinium coparium* Gaultheria hispidula* Vaccinium vitis-idaea*		
Arctostaphylos alpina* Arctostaphylos uva-ursi* Arctostaphylos up-lipticus* Arct		
Aruncus dioicus Asclepias ovalifolia Asclepias speciosa Cassiope lycopodioides* Cassiope mertensiana* Cassiope stelleriana* Cassiope tetragona* Chamaerhodos erecta Chimaphila umbellata* Cornus canadensis Cornus suecica Cornus suecica Coryas integrifolia* Cryas octopetala* Eriogonum nardrosaceum Eriogonum nardrosaceum Eriogonum nardrosaceum Eriogonum pauciforum Eriogonum pauciforum Eriogonum paucifolia Eriogonum paucifolia Eriagaria virginiana Galium boreale Gaultheria hispidula* Vaccinium scoparium* Cassiope stelleriana* Phyllodoce empetriformis* Phyllodoce empetriformis* Phyllodoce empetriformis* Phyllodoce empetriformis* Phyllodoce empetriformis* Polygonum paronychia Polygonum paronychia Polygonum paronychia Polygonum paschalinense Rhododendron lapponicum* Rubus arcticus Rubus arcticus Rubus nivalis* Rubus nivalis* Pryas integrifolia* Rubus pubescens Eriogonum androsaceum Salix arctica* Eriogonum flavum Salix cascadensis* Eriogonum pauciforum Salix reticulata* Eriogonum pauciforum Saxifraga bronchialis Saxifraga flagellaris Fragaria vesca Saxifraga oppositifolia Saxifraga fuicuspidata Galium boreale Gaultheria hispidula* Vaccinium caespitosum* Vaccinium caespitosum* Gaultheria humifusa* Vaccinium vitis-idaea*		Orthilia secunda
Aruncus dioicus Asclepias ovalifolia Asclepias speciosa Cassiope lycopodioides* Cassiope mertensiana* Cassiope stelleriana* Cassiope tetragona* Chamaerhodos erecta Chimaphila umbellata* Cornus canadensis Cornus suecica Cornus suecica Coryas integrifolia* Cryas octopetala* Eriogonum nardrosaceum Eriogonum nardrosaceum Eriogonum nardrosaceum Eriogonum pauciforum Eriogonum pauciforum Eriogonum paucifolia Eriogonum paucifolia Eriagaria virginiana Galium boreale Gaultheria hispidula* Vaccinium scoparium* Cassiope stelleriana* Phyllodoce empetriformis* Phyllodoce empetriformis* Phyllodoce empetriformis* Phyllodoce empetriformis* Phyllodoce empetriformis* Polygonum paronychia Polygonum paronychia Polygonum paronychia Polygonum paschalinense Rhododendron lapponicum* Rubus arcticus Rubus arcticus Rubus nivalis* Rubus nivalis* Pryas integrifolia* Rubus pubescens Eriogonum androsaceum Salix arctica* Eriogonum flavum Salix cascadensis* Eriogonum pauciforum Salix reticulata* Eriogonum pauciforum Saxifraga bronchialis Saxifraga flagellaris Fragaria vesca Saxifraga oppositifolia Saxifraga fuicuspidata Galium boreale Gaultheria hispidula* Vaccinium caespitosum* Vaccinium caespitosum* Gaultheria humifusa* Vaccinium vitis-idaea*	Arctostaphylos uva-ursi*	Oxycoccus oxycoccos*
Asclepias speciosa Cassiope lycopodioides* Cassiope mertensiana* Cassiope mertensiana* Cassiope stelleriana* Cassiope tetragona* Chamaerhodos erecta Chimaphila menziesii* Chimaphila umbellata* Cornus canadensis Cornus canadensis Cornus suecica Chimaphila wibellata* Cornus suecica Chimaphila wibellata* Cornus suecica Cornus canadensis Rubus articus Cornus canadensis Cornus canadensis Cornus suecica Cornus suecica Rubus canadenorus Cornus canadensis Cornus can		
Cassiope lycopodioides* Cassiope mertensiana* Cassiope mertensiana* Phyllodoce glanduliflora* Cassiope stelleriana* Polygonum cuspidatum Cassiope tetragona* Polygonum paronychia Chamaerhodos erecta Polygonum polystachyum Chimaphila menziesii* Polygonum sachalinense Chimaphila umbellata* Rhododendron lapponicum* Cornus canadensis Rubus arcticus Cornus suecica Rubus chamaemorus Drabaspp. Rubus lasiococcus Dryas drummondii* Rubus nivalis* Dryas integrifolia* Rubus pedatus Dryas octopetala* Empetrum nigrum* Eriogonum androsaceum Salix arctica* Eriogonum flavum Salix cascadensis* Eriogonum niveum Salix reticulata* Eriogonum ovalifolium Eriogonum ovalifolium Salix stolonifera* Eriogonum numbellatum Sasifraga bronchialis Eriogonum umbellatum Saxifraga flagellaris Fragaria vesca Saxifraga oppositifolia Fragaria virginiana Saxifraga tricuspidata Galium boreale Gaultheria hispidula* Vaccinium csoparium* Gaultheria humifusa* Vaccinium vitis-idaea*	Asclepias ovalifolia	Penstemon ellipticus*
Cassiope lycopodioides* Cassiope mertensiana* Cassiope mertensiana* Phyllodoce glanduliflora* Cassiope stelleriana* Polygonum cuspidatum Cassiope tetragona* Polygonum paronychia Chamaerhodos erecta Polygonum polystachyum Chimaphila menziesii* Polygonum sachalinense Chimaphila umbellata* Rhododendron lapponicum* Cornus canadensis Rubus arcticus Cornus suecica Rubus chamaemorus Drabaspp. Rubus lasiococcus Dryas drummondii* Rubus nivalis* Dryas integrifolia* Rubus pedatus Dryas octopetala* Empetrum nigrum* Eriogonum androsaceum Salix arctica* Eriogonum flavum Salix cascadensis* Eriogonum niveum Salix reticulata* Eriogonum ovalifolium Eriogonum ovalifolium Salix stolonifera* Eriogonum numbellatum Sasifraga bronchialis Eriogonum umbellatum Saxifraga flagellaris Fragaria vesca Saxifraga oppositifolia Fragaria virginiana Saxifraga tricuspidata Galium boreale Gaultheria hispidula* Vaccinium csoparium* Gaultheria humifusa* Vaccinium vitis-idaea*	Asclepias speciosa	Phlox caespitosa
Cassiope mertensiana* Cassiope stelleriana* Cassiope stelleriana* Chamaerhodos erecta Chimaphila menziesii* Cornus canadensis Cornus canadensis Cornus suecica Drabaspp. Drabaspp. Rubus lasiococcus Dryas drummondii* Rubus nivalis* Dryas integrifolia* Rubus usinus* Eriogonum nadrosaceum Eriogonum niveum Eriogonum niveum Eriogonum niveum Eriogonum naduliolium Eriogonum numbellatum Fragaria vesca Fragaria virginiana Galium boreale Gaultheria hispidula* Polygonum capalinoum Polygonum capalitosum* Polygonum sonystachyum Polygonum soyalainese Polygonum nigum* Rubus asciococcus Rubus lasiococcus Rubus lasiococcus Rubus podatus Pryas octopetala* Rubus pedatus Pryas octopetala* Rubus pubescens Empetrum nigrum* Rubus ursinus* Eriogonum flavum Salix arctica* Eriogonum flavum Salix reticulata* Eriogonum pauciflorum Saxifraga bronchialis Fragaria vesca Saxifraga oppositifolia Fragaria virginiana Saxifraga tricuspidata Galium boreale Gaultheria hispidula* Vaccinium caespitosum* Gaultheria humifusa* Vaccinium scoparium* Gaultheria ovatifolia*		
Cassiope stelleriana* Cassiope tetragona* Chamaerhodos erecta Chimaphila menziesii* Chimaphila umbellata* Chimaphila umbellata* Chimaphila umbellata* Cornus canadensis Cornus suecica Crius suecica Rubus chamaemorus Crius suecica Rubus plasiococcus Crius suecica Crius suecica Crius suecica Rubus lasiococcus Crius suecica Rubus pubes lasiococcus Crius suecica Crius suecica Rubus lasiococcus Rubus pubescens Enjery so octopetala* Rubus pubescens Empetrum nigrum* Rubus pubescens Eriogonum androsaceum Salix arctica* Eriogonum flavum Salix arctica* Eriogonum flavum Salix cascadensis* Eriogonum heracleoides Salix polaris* Eriogonum valifolium Salix reticulata* Eriogonum ovalifolium Salix reticulata* Eriogonum pauciflorum Saxifraga bronchialis Eriogonum pauciflorum Saxifraga fagellaris Fragaria vesca Saxifraga flagellaris Fragaria vesca Saxifraga oppositifolia Fragaria virginiana Saxifraga tricuspidata Galium boreale Galium boreale Galutheria hispidula* Vaccinium caespitosum* Gaultheria humifusa* Vaccinium scoparium*		
Cassiope tetragona* Chamaerhodos erecta Chimaphila menziesii* Chimaphila umbellata* Cornus canadensis Cornus suecica Crassiope tummondii* Crassiope tummondii* Crassiope tummondii* Crassiope tala* Criogonum androsaceum Criogonum flavum Criogonum flavum Criogonum heracleoides Criogonum niveum Criogonum niveum Criogonum pauciflorum Criogonum pauciflorum Criogonum pauciflorum Criogonum umbellatum Crassiope tala* Criogonum niveum Criogonum pauciflorum Criogonum saxifraga bronchialis Criogonum umbellatum Crassiope tala* Criogonum pauciflorum Criogonum pauciflorum Criogonum pauciflorum Criogonum pauciflorum Crassifraga flagellaris Cragaria vesca Crassifraga flagellaris Cragaria virginiana Cralium boreale Cralium bor		
Chamaerhodos erecta Chimaphila menziesii* Polygonum sachalinense Chimaphila menziesii* Rhododendron lapponicum* Cornus canadensis Rubus arcticus Cornus suecica Rubus chamaemorus Drabaspp. Rubus lasiococcus Dryas drummondii* Rubus nivalis* Dryas integrifolia* Rubus pedatus Dryas octopetala* Rubus pubescens Empetrum nigrum* Rubus ursinus* Eriogonum androsaceum Salix cascadensis* Eriogonum flavum Salix cascadensis* Eriogonum niveum Salix reticulata* Eriogonum niveum Salix reticulata* Eriogonum pauciflorum Salix stolonifera* Eriogonum mubellatum Saxifraga bronchialis Eriogonum umbellatum Saxifraga cespitosa Frageria chiloensis Fragaria virginiana Saxifraga tricuspidata Galium boreale Gaultheria hispidula* Vaccinium csoparium* Gaultheria humifusa* Vaccinium vitis-idaea*		
Chimaphila menziesii* Chimaphila umbellata* Chimaphila umbellata* Cornus canadensis Rubus arcticus Cornus suecica Rubus chamaemorus Drabaspp. Rubus lasiococcus Dryas drummondii* Rubus nivalis* Dryas integrifolia* Rubus pedatus Dryas octopetala* Rubus pubescens Empetrum nigrum* Eriogonum androsaceum Salix cascadensis* Eriogonum flavum Salix cascadensis* Eriogonum niveum Salix reticulata* Eriogonum niveum Salix stolonifera* Eriogonum pauciflorum Salix stolonifera* Eriogonum umbellatum Saxifraga bronchialis Eriogonum umbellatum Saxifraga cespitosa Frageria chiloensis Fragaria vesca Saxifraga oppositifolia Fragaria virginiana Saxifraga tricuspidata Galium boreale Gaultheria hispidula* Vaccinium cooparium* Gaultheria humifusa* Vaccinium vitis-idaea*		
Chimaphila umbellata* Cornus canadensis Rubus arcticus Rubus chamaemorus Drabaspp. Rubus lasiococcus Dryas drummondii* Rubus nivalis* Dryas integrifolia* Rubus pedatus Dryas octopetala* Empetrum nigrum* Eriogonum androsaceum Eriogonum flavum Salix arctica* Eriogonum flavum Salix reticulata* Eriogonum niveum Salix reticulata* Eriogonum ovalifolium Salix stolonifera* Eriogonum pauciflorum Saxifraga bronchialis Eriogonum umbellatum Saxifraga cespitosa Fragaria vesca Saily nopositifolia Saxifraga flagellaris Fragaria virginiana Saxifraga tricuspidata Galum boreale Gaultheria hispidula* Vaccinium scoparium* Gaultheria votifolia* Vaccinium vitis-idaea* Rubus pubesceus Rubus padatus Rubus padatus Salix actica* Salix arctica* Salix arctic	Chimaphila menziesii*	
Cornus canadensis Cornus suecica Rubus chamaemorus Drabaspp. Rubus lasiococcus Dryas drummondii* Rubus nivalis* Dryas integrifolia* Rubus pedatus Dryas octopetala* Empetrum nigrum* Rubus ursinus* Eriogonum androsaceum Salix arctica* Eriogonum flavum Salix arctica* Eriogonum heracleoides Salix polaris* Eriogonum niveum Salix reticulata* Eriogonum ovalifolium Salix stolonifera* Eriogonum pauciflorum Saxifraga bronchialis Eriogonum umbellatum Saxifraga cespitosa Frageria chiloensis Saxifraga lfagellaris Fragaria vesca Sailx polaris* Sibaldia procumbens Gaultheria hispidula* Vaccinium coepitosum* Gaultheria ovatifolia* Vaccinium vitis-idaea*	•	
Drabaspp. Rubus lasiococcus Dryas drummondii* Rubus nivalis* Dryas integrifolia* Rubus pedatus Dryas octopetala* Rubus pubescens Empetrum nigrum* Rubus ursinus* Eriogonum androsaceum Salix arctica* Eriogonum flavum Salix cascadensis* Eriogonum heracleoides Salix polaris* Eriogonum niveum Salix stolonifera* Eriogonum pauciflorum Salix stolonifera* Eriogonum pauciflorum Saxifraga bronchialis Eriogonum umbellatum Saxifraga cespitosa Frageria chiloensis Saxifraga flagellaris Fragaria vesca Saxifraga oppositifolia Fragaria virginiana Saxifraga tricuspidata Galium boreale Gaultheria hispidula* Vaccinium cespitosum* Gaultheria humifusa* Vaccinium vitis-idaea*	•	
Dryas drummondii* Rubus nivalis* Dryas integrifolia* Rubus pedatus Dryas octopetala* Empetrum nigrum* Eriogonum androsaceum Eriogonum flavum Salix acsacadensis* Eriogonum heracleoides Eriogonum niveum Salix reticulata* Eriogonum ovalifolium Salix stolonifera* Eriogonum pauciflorum Salix stolonifera* Eriogonum umbellatum Saxifraga bronchialis Eriogonum umbellatum Saxifraga cespitosa Frageria chiloensis Saxifraga flagellaris Fragaria vesca Saxifraga oppositifolia Fragaria virginiana Saxifraga tricuspidata Galium boreale Gaultheria hispidula* Vaccinium caespitosum* Gaultheria votifolia* Vaccinium vitis-idaea*	Cornus suecica	Rubus chamaemorus
Dryas integrifolia* Rubus pedatus Dryas octopetala* Rubus pubescens Empetrum nigrum* Rubus ursinus* Eriogonum androsaceum Salix arctica* Eriogonum flavum Salix cascadensis* Eriogonum heracleoides Salix polaris* Eriogonum niveum Salix reticulata* Eriogonum ovalifolium Salix stolonifera* Eriogonum pauciflorum Saxifraga bronchialis Eriogonum umbellatum Saxifraga (espitosa Frageria chiloensis Saxifraga flagellaris Fragaria vesca Saxifraga oppositifolia Fragaria virginiana Saxifraga tricuspidata Galium boreale Gaultheria hispidula* Vaccinium caespitosum* Vaccinium scoparium* Gaultheria ovatifolia* Vaccinium vitis-idaea*	Drabaspp.	Rubus lasiococcus
Dryas octopetala* Empetrum nigrum* Eniogonum androsaceum Eriogonum leracleoides Eriogonum niveum Eriogonum niveum Eriogonum niveum Eriogonum ovalifolium Eriogonum pauciflorum Salix reticulata* Eriogonum pauciflorum Salix stolonifera* Eriogonum umbellatum Saxifraga bronchialis Eriogonum umbellatum Saxifraga cespitosa Frageria chiloensis Saxifraga flagellaris Fragaria vesca Saxifraga oppositifolia Fragaria virginiana Saxifraga tricuspidata Galium boreale Gaultheria hispidula* Vaccinium caespitosum* Gaultheria ovatifolia* Vaccinium vitis-idaea*		Rubus nivalis*
Empetrum nigrum* Eriogonum androsaceum Eriogonum flavum Salix cascadensis* Eriogonum heracleoides Salix polaris* Eriogonum niveum Salix esticulata* Eriogonum niveum Salix stolonifera* Eriogonum pauciflorum Saxifraga bronchialis Eriogonum umbellatum Saxifraga lagellaris Frageria chiloensis Saxifraga appositifolia Fragaria vesca Saxifraga appositifolia Fragaria virginiana Saxifraga tricuspidata Galium boreale Saultheria hispidula* Vaccinium caespitosum* Gaultheria ovatifolia* Vaccinium vitis-idaea*	Dryas integrifolia*	Rubus pedatus
Empetrum nigrum* Eriogonum androsaceum Eriogonum flavum Salix cascadensis* Eriogonum heracleoides Salix polaris* Eriogonum niveum Salix esticulata* Eriogonum niveum Salix stolonifera* Eriogonum pauciflorum Saxifraga bronchialis Eriogonum umbellatum Saxifraga lagellaris Frageria chiloensis Saxifraga appositifolia Fragaria vesca Saxifraga appositifolia Fragaria virginiana Saxifraga tricuspidata Galium boreale Saultheria hispidula* Vaccinium caespitosum* Gaultheria ovatifolia* Vaccinium vitis-idaea*	<i>y</i> 0	
Eriogonum flavum Eriogonum heracleoides Salix cascadensis* Eriogonum niveum Salix reticulata* Eriogonum ovalifolium Salix stolonifera* Eriogonum pauciflorum Saxifraga bronchialis Eriogonum umbellatum Saxifraga cespitosa Frageria chiloensis Saxifraga flagellaris Fragaria vesca Saxifraga oppositifolia Fragaria virginiana Saxifraga tricuspidata Galium boreale Gaultheria hispidula* Vaccinium caespitosum* Gaultheria ovatifolia* Vaccinium scoparium* Gaultheria ovatifolia* Vaccinium vitis-idaea*		
Eriogonum flavum Eriogonum heracleoides Salix cascadensis* Eriogonum niveum Salix reticulata* Eriogonum ovalifolium Salix stolonifera* Eriogonum pauciflorum Saxifraga bronchialis Eriogonum umbellatum Saxifraga cespitosa Frageria chiloensis Saxifraga flagellaris Fragaria vesca Saxifraga oppositifolia Fragaria virginiana Saxifraga tricuspidata Galium boreale Gaultheria hispidula* Vaccinium caespitosum* Gaultheria ovatifolia* Vaccinium scoparium* Gaultheria ovatifolia* Vaccinium vitis-idaea*	Eriogonum androsaceum	Salix arctica*
Eriogonum niveum Salix reticulata* Eriogonum ovalifolium Salix stolonifera* Eriogonum pauciflorum Saxifraga bronchialis Eriogonum umbellatum Saxifraga cespitosa Frageria chiloensis Saxifraga flagellaris Fragaria vesca Saxifraga oppositifolia Fragaria virginiana Saxifraga tricuspidata Galium boreale Sibbaldia procumbens Gaultheria hispidula* Vaccinium caespitosum* Gaultheria ovatifolia* Vaccinium vitis-idaea*		Salix cascadensis*
Eriogonum ovalifolium Salix stolonifera* Eriogonum pauciflorum Saxifraga bronchialis Eriogonum umbellatum Saxifraga cespitosa Frageria chiloensis Saxifraga flagellaris Fragaria vesca Saxifraga oppositifolia Fragaria virginiana Saxifraga tricuspidata Galium boreale Sibbaldia procumbens Gaultheria hispidula* Vaccinium caespitosum* Gaultheria ovatifolia* Vaccinium scoparium* Gaultheria ovatifolia*	Eriogonum heracleoides	Salix polaris*
Eriogonum ovalifolium Salix stolonifera* Eriogonum pauciflorum Saxifraga bronchialis Eriogonum umbellatum Saxifraga cespitosa Frageria chiloensis Saxifraga flagellaris Fragaria vesca Saxifraga oppositifolia Fragaria virginiana Saxifraga tricuspidata Galium boreale Sibbaldia procumbens Gaultheria hispidula* Vaccinium caespitosum* Gaultheria ovatifolia* Vaccinium scoparium* Gaultheria ovatifolia*	Eriogonum niveum	Salix reticulata*
Eriogonum pauciflorum Saxifraga bronchialis Eriogonum umbellatum Saxifraga cespitosa Frageria chiloensis Saxifraga flagellaris Fragaria vesca Saxifraga oppositifolia Fragaria virginiana Saxifraga tricuspidata Galium boreale Sibbaldia procumbens Gaultheria hispidula* Vaccinium caespitosum* Gaultheria ovatifolia* Vaccinium scoparium* Gaultheria ovatifolia*		Salix stolonifera*
Frageria chiloensis Fragaria vesca Saxifraga flagellaris Fragaria vesca Saxifraga oppositifolia Fragaria virginiana Saxifraga tricuspidata Galium boreale Gaultheria hispidula* Vaccinium caespitosum* Gaultheria humifusa* Vaccinium scoparium* Gaultheria ovatifolia* Vaccinium vitis-idaea*		Saxifraga bronchialis
Fragaria vesca Saxifraga oppositifolia Fragaria virginiana Saxifraga tricuspidata Galium boreale Sibbaldia procumbens Gaultheria hispidula* Vaccinium caespitosum* Gaultheria humifusa* Vaccinium scoparium* Gaultheria ovatifolia* Vaccinium vitis-idaea*	Eriogonum umbellatum	Saxifraga cespitosa
Fragaria vesca Saxifraga oppositifolia Fragaria virginiana Saxifraga tricuspidata Galium boreale Sibbaldia procumbens Gaultheria hispidula* Vaccinium caespitosum* Gaultheria humifusa* Vaccinium scoparium* Gaultheria ovatifolia* Vaccinium vitis-idaea*	Frageria chiloensis	Saxifraga flagellaris
Fragaria virginiana Galium boreale Sibbaldia procumbens Gaultheria hispidula* Vaccinium caespitosum* Gaultheria humifusa* Vaccinium scoparium* Gaultheria ovatifolia* Vaccinium vitis-idaea*	U	0 0
Galium boreale Sibbaldia procumbens Gaultheria hispidula* Vaccinium caespitosum* Gaultheria humifusa* Vaccinium scoparium* Gaultheria ovatifolia* Vaccinium vitis-idaea*		
Gaultheria hispidula* Vaccinium caespitosum* Gaultheria humifusa* Vaccinium scoparium* Gaultheria ovatifolia* Vaccinium vitis-idaea*		
Gaultheria humifusa* Vaccinium scoparium* Gaultheria ovatifolia* Vaccinium vitis-idaea*	Gaultheria hispidula*	Vaccinium caespitosum*
Gaultheria ovatifolia* Vaccinium vitis-idaea*		
	Gaultheria ovatifolia*	
Geocaulon lividum Vaccinium myrtillus*	Geocaulon lividum	Vaccinium myrtillus*

^{*} low woody species

Plants Growing on Subdominant Substrates

Where the objectives of a study or the features of a particular site warrant collecting data for plants growing on substrates other than the dominant substrate, list these under "Additional Species" on the form. Identify the layer to which the plant belongs (A–E) and the type of substrate using the codes in Table 3.2. Label the top of the blank column used to record the type of substrate as "SS" (subdominant substrate).

TABLE 3.2. Codes for subdominant substrates

Coae	Description
A	Aquatic; where water is the subdominant substrate
L	Cobbles, stones, or bedrock outcrops (epiliths)
О	Organic matter (e.g., plants growing on patches of organic matter on a talus slope where the dominant substrate is rock)
S	Bare soil (episols)
X	Dead wood (epixyles)

Estimating Percent Cover

In most surveys, only those species growing on the dominant substrate are included in estimates. Percent cover is estimated as the percentage of the ground surface covered when the crowns are projected vertically. Follow the outside perimeter of the projected crown. For the tree layer, distinct holes in the canopy should be subtracted from the estimate. For other layers, small gaps that are not fully covered can be ignored.

- Viewing the layer obliquely, rather than vertically, can result in an over-estimation.
- Avoid biasing estimates because of crown density.
- For species with high cover values, mentally move the plants to a corner of the plot to estimate if they represent one-quarter, one-third, or one-half, or more of the plot.
- For species that almost cover the plot, mentally move them together and estimate how much of the area is not covered by the plants.
- For species with low cover, try making estimates for subsections in each quarter of the plot.
- Equating percent cover with equivalent dimensions relative to plot area
 can be very helpful (Table 3.3). For several small scattered areas of
 coverage, think about the area covered by 1% (2 x 2 m in a 400 m²
 plot), or 0.1% (63 x 63 cm), and add up the total number of areas of
 cover that are roughly equivalent to these dimensions.

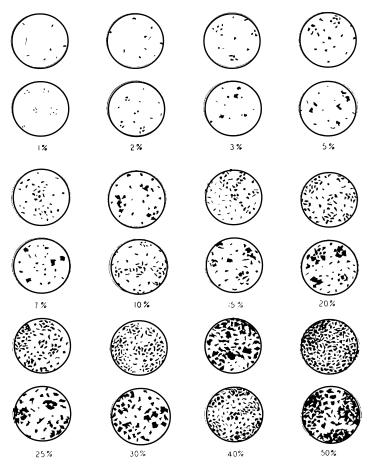


FIGURE 3.2. Comparison charts for visual estimation of foliage cover.

 Comparison charts (Figure 3.2) and the example percentage coverage diagram shown in Figure 3.3 are other useful aids.

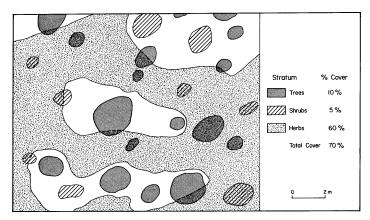


FIGURE 3.3. An example of percent coverages in a plot, viewed from above.

Recording Percent Cover

Percent cover may be entered in whole numbers (1–100), tenths of a percent (0.1–0.9), hundredths of a percent (recorded as 1H–9H), and thousandths of a percent (recorded as 1T–9T). Table 3.3 gives examples of the relationship of dimensional area to percentage area, for a 20 x 20 m (400 m²) plot, and coding.

TABLE 3.3. Dimensions of various areas in a 400 m² plot

Dimensions	Area (m²)	% cover	Coding
10 x 10 m	100.0	25.0	25
5 x 8 m	40.0	10.0	10
2 x 2 m	4.0	1.0	1
63 x 63 cm	0.4	0.1	0.1
20 x 20 cm	0.04	0.01	1H
6.3 x 6.3 cm	0.004	0.001	1T

Blank Columns on the Form

Within the main body of the form, immediately to the left of the columns provided for recording percent cover, two blank columns have been provided for recording additional information. Suggested items that may be recorded here include subdominant substrates (SS), distribution

codes (DC), plant vigour ratings (VI), phenology (PV or PG), utilization (UT), estimates of available forage (AF), and arboreal lichen loading (LL). Codes for these items are provided in Appendix 3.1. Enter a two-letter abbreviation for the type of data at the top of each column used. For types of data other than those listed here, explain under Item 11, "Notes."

Completing the Form

Numbered items below refer to circled numbers on the Vegetation Description Form shown at the beginning of this section. A recommended sequence for completing the form is described under "Field Procedure."

1. Species List

Certain projects may require a listing of dominant or indicator species only. Check the appropriate box to indicate whether an attempt has been made to record a complete listing of all species on the dominant substrate ("Comp."), or if only a partial list has been made ("Part.").

2. Percent Cover by Layer

After all species have been listed, enter the total percent cover by layer (see descriptions of layers and instructions for estimating and recording percent cover at the beginning of this section). Note that because of overlaps the sum of the percent cover values for all species within each layer may be greater than the total layer coverage.

3. Surveyor(s)

Record the first initial and last name of the person(s) who described the vegetation.

4. Plot Number

Record plot number from the Site Description Form.

Page __ of __

If more than one page is required, enter the number as a total and number each page.

6. Trees

Estimate percent cover for each tree species by sub-layer and layer (A1, A2, A3, A, B1, B2, B). If trees in A1 are veterans, record this under Item 11, "Notes." For each of the A and B layers, the total percent coverage for a species will often be less than the sum of the covers for each of the sub-layers, due to crown overlap.

7. Shrubs

Estimate percent cover for each shrub species by sub-layer (B1 and B2), and as a total for the species (B). The total percent coverage of a species will often be less than the sum of the two sub-layer values due to overlap of foliage.

8. Herb Layer

Estimate percent cover for each species in the herb (C) layer.

9. Moss, Lichen, and Seedling Layer

Estimate percent cover for each moss, lichen, and seedling species in this layer (D).

10. Additional Species

Use these lines to list species from the E layer (epiphytes), additional species from any other layer if there has been insufficient space elsewhere on the form, and species growing on subdominant substrates.

11. Notes

Use this space to record important features not described elsewhere, or for explanatory notes keyed to other entries on the vegetation form.

APPENDIX 3.1 Coding for Additional Information

Arboreal Lichen Loading (LL)

If a "Tree Attributes for Wildlife" form is not required, a general assessment of lichen loading can be recorded by tree species on the vegetation description form. Assess standing live and dead trees for lichen loading on the branches within 4.5 m of the ground or root collar. Assign an overall rating (0–5) by species by comparing with photos in *Estimating the Abundance of Aboreal Forage Lichens* (Armleder et al. 1992). A value of 0 indicates no lichens. If trees have lichens, but none are below the 4.5 m mark, rate as zero.

Available Forage (AF)

The amount of available forage may be estimated or measured in g/m^2 and recorded by species in one of the blank columns. If estimated for groups of species, such as palatable forbs, grasses, browse species, undesirable species, etc., record under item 11, "Notes." Also indicate whether forage was measured or estimated and note the method of determining weight (i.e., estimated green, air-dried, or oven-dried).

Distribution Codes (DC)

The spatial distribution pattern of individuals of each species is described using the following codes:

Code	Description	No. plants ^a in 400 m ²
1	Rare individual, single occurrence	1
2	A few sporadically occurring individuals	2–5
3	A single patch or clump of a species	1 patch (< 25% of plot)
4	Several sporadically occurring individuals	≥6
5	A few patches or clumps of a species	2–5 patches, each < 25% of plot
6	Several well-spaced patches or clumps	≥ 6 patches, each < 25% of plot
7	Continuous uniform occurrence of well-spaced individuals	many

(over)

Code	Description	No. plants ^a in 400 m ²
8	Continuous occurrence of a species with a few gaps in the distribution	many
9	Continuous dense occurrence of a species	many

^a guidelines for low shrubs, herbs, and mosses

Utilization Ratings (UT)

Coding for utilization (present use) of browse and forage species is as follows:

Code	% utilization	Description
0	0	Nil
1	1-15	Slight
2	16-36	Light
3	36-65	Moderate
4	66-80	Heavy
5	> 80	Extreme

Coding for Vigour (VI)

Plant vigour is described using the following codes:

Code	Description
0	Species dead
1	Vigour poor
2	Vigour fair
3	Vigour good
4	Vigour excellent

Phenology Codes: Vegetative Stages (PV)

Deciduous trees or shrubs

Code	Description
0	Closed bud
1	Buds with green tips
2	Green leaf-out, but not
	unfolded
3	Leaf unfolding up to
	25%
4	Leaf unfolding up to
	50%
5	Leaf unfolding up to
	75%
6	Full leaf unfolding
7	First leaves turned
	yellow
8	Leaf yellowing up to
	50%
9	Leaf yellowing over 50%
10	Bare

Herbs

Code	Description
0	Without shoots above
	ground
1	Shoots without unfolded
	leaves
2	First leaf unfolded
3	2 or 3 leaves unfolded
4	Several leaves unfolded
5	Almost all leaves unfolded
6	Plant fully developed
7	Stem and/or first leaves
	fading
8	Yellowing up to 50%
9	Yellowing over 50%
10	Dead

Conifers

Code	Description
0	Closed bud
1	Swollen bud
2	Split bud
3	Shoot capped
4	Shoot elongated
5	Shoot full length, lighter
	green
6	Shoot mature, equally
	green

Grasses

Code	Description	
0	Without shoots above	
	ground	
1	Shoots without unfolded	
	leaves	
2	First leaf unfolded	
3	2 or 3 leaves unfolded	
4	Beginning of develop-	
	ment of blades of grass	
5	Blades partly formed	
6	Plant fully developed	
7	Blades and/or first	
	leaves turning yellow	
8	Yellowing up to 50%	
9	Yellowing over 50%	
10	Dead	

Phenology Codes: Vegetative Stages (PV) (continued) Ferns

Code	Description		
0	Without shoots above		
	ground		
1	Rolled fronds above		
	ground		
2	First frond unfolded		
3	2 or 3 fronds unfolded		
4	Several fronds unfolded		
5	Almost all fronds unfolded		
6	Plant fully developed		
7	First fronds fading		
8	Yellowing up to 50%		
9	Yellowing over 50%		
10	Dead		

Phenology Codes: Generative Stages (PG)

Trees, shrubs, and herbs

Description		
Without blossom buds		
Blossom buds recogniz- able		
Blossom buds strongly swollen		
Shortly before flowering		
Beginning flowering		
In bloom up to 25%		
In bloom up to 50%		
Full bloom		
Fading		
Completely faded		
Bearing green fruit		
Bearing ripe fruit		
Bearing overripe fruit		
Fruit or seed dispersal		

Grasses

Code	Description	
0	Without recognizable	
	inflorescence	
1	Inflorescence recognizable,	
	closed	
2	Inflorescence partly visible	
3	Inflorescence fully visible,	
	not unfolded	
4	Inflorescence unfolded	
5	First blooms pollenizing	
6	Up to 50% pollenized	
7	Full bloom	
8	Fading	
9	Fully faded	
10	Bearing fruit	
11	Fruit or seed dispersal	

Ferns

Cada	Description
Code	Description
0	Sori absent
1	Sori green, forming
2	Sori mature, darker, drier
3	Sori depressing, strobili
	forming in lycopodium

4 MENSURATION

Contents

		ľ
Mens	suration Form	
Field	Procedure	
	ting Stands and Sample Trees for Mensuration	
	pleting the Form	
1.	Surveyor	
2.	Tree Number	
3.	Species	
4.	Diameter at Breast Height	
5.	Height Calculations	
	Slope to top of tree	
	Slope to DBH or base of tree	
	Slope distance	
	Slope	
	Horizontal distance	
	Height	
	Height to DBH	
	Total height	
6.	Age at Breast Height	
7.	Site Index	
8.	Suppression	
9.	Pathological Indicators	
	Conks	
	Blind conks	
	Scars	
	Fork or crook	1
	Frost cracks]
	Mistletoe]
	Rotten branch	1
	Dead or broken top	
	Non-suspect abnormalities]
10.	Damage	1
11	Site Series	1

Appe	endices	Page
4.1	Tree species codes	19
	Damage agent codes	22
Table	es	
4.1	Slope distance factors	7
	Defect location codes	8
Figu	res	
4.1	Blind conk and sound knot, on a standing tree and in	
	cross-section	9
4.2	Appearance of scars that are old or freshly healed	10
4.3	Appearance of scars with light or heavy damage	11
4.4	Appearance of cankers caused by fungi	11
4.5		
	falling rock	11
4.6	Appearance of different forms of forks and crooks.	12
4.7		
	in cross-section	13
4.8	Examples of mistletoe infection	13
4.9	How to determine if mistletoe infection causes tree	
	to be suspect	14
4.10	How to determine if rotten branches are a probable	
	indicator of decay	14
	maicator or accuj	

DBH

SITE SERIES

Field Procedure

Getting Started

- 1. Establish plot boundaries.
- Traverse the plot systematically to identify candidate sample trees according to project objectives. If largest diameter trees are being sampled, use Tree Diameter Tally to assist in selection.
- 3. When numbering trees, start with the tree closest to due north of plot centre and proceed in a clockwise direction.

Measure and Record

- 1. Enter the name(s) of persons collecting mensuration data.
- 2. Record tree numbers and species of sample trees.
- 3. Examine each tree for evidence of suppression, pathological indicators, and pests or injury. If present, and if determining the site index is a primary objective of the project, select a different sample that is free of defects (if possible). If site index is not a primary objective, or no alternate defect-free trees exist, retain the sample and enter coding as appropriate.
- Determine and record diameters and age at breast height. If age is to be determined later, place the collected core in a labelled straw.
- 5. Determine and record measurements for height calculations.
- Calculate height, total height, and site index (or leave blank and calculate using *SiteTools* software and the data entry program VENUS).
- 7. If the site is variable, identify the site series code for the area around each tree, in consultation with other surveyors.
- 8. Check that all the required information has been collected and noted on the form. Strike through any fields that were not assessed.

Selecting Stands and Sample Trees for Mensuration

Stand selection criteria will depend entirely on project objectives. If the data is being collected to determine site index, stands should have the following characteristics:

- even-aged (preferably 20–150 years of age)
- dominated by one tree species (or target species > 60% of basal area)
- moderately dense
- ecologically uniform site of at least 400 m²

When determining site index is not a primary objective, select the two or three largest diameter trees of each species for mensuration. If the data is being collected to determine site index, collect mensuration data on "topheight" trees that meet the following criteria:

- 100 largest diameter trees per hectare (largest 4 per 400 m² plot)
- · dominant or co-dominant
- · not wolf, open grown, or veteran
- · straight-stemmed, free of disease, damage, and breakage
- free of suppression (above breast height)
- vigorous, with full crowns

Completing the Form

Numbered items below refer to circled numbers on the Mensuration form shown at the beginning of this section. A recommended sequence for completing the form is described under "Field Procedure."

1. Surveyor

Enter the first initial and last name of the person(s) collecting mensuration data.

2. Tree Number

Assign numbers sequentially to each tree sampled. Start with the tree closest to due north of plot centre and proceed clockwise. Numbers may be painted or tagged on trees.

3. Species

Identify tree species using the codes given in Appendix 4.1.

4. Diameter at Breast Height

Record DBH (diameter at breast height) to the nearest 0.1 cm. Measure at 1.3 m above the point of germination. On slopes, measure from the high side of the root collar.

5. Height Calculations

Record the following measurements: heights and distances in metres and slopes in percent. Tree height can be calculated in the field using equations and tables provided, or automatically using the data entry program "VENUS."

Slope to top of tree (TOP):

Enter the percent slope reading to the top of the tree, showing the sign (usually "+"). If a reading greater than 100% is obtained, move further from the tree, or upslope.

Slope to DBH or base of tree (BOT):

Enter the percent slope reading to DBH, or to the base of the tree, or to lowest visible point, including the sign ("+" or "-"). The maximum allowable is 100%.

Slope distance (SD):

Enter the distance (in metres, to one decimal) from the observer to the centre of the tree trunk, usually at breast height.

Slope (SL):

Enter the slope gradient between the observer and the tree at breast height (the slope of the measuring tape used to determine slope distance). This value is used in height calculations done by "VENUS."

Horizontal distance (HD):

Calculate this by multiplying slope distance (SD) by a slope distance factor from Table 4.1. The slope percent column in this table refers to the slope gradient measurement Slope (SL).

Height (HT):

Enter the height (m) of the measured part of the tree to one decimal, calculated as follows:

 $HT = [(TOP - BOT) \times HD] \div 100$

Height to DBH (HT TO DBH):

If the BOT reading was not taken at the base of the tree, record the height at which it was taken. This is usually DBH, but can be another value. Enter "0" if taken at the base of tree.

TABLE 4.1. Slope distance factors

% slope	Factor	% slope	Factor	% slope	Factor
10	.995	36	.941	62	.849
11	.994	37	.938	63	.846
12	.993	38	.935	64	.842
13	.992	39	.932	65	.838
14	.990	40	.928	66	.834
15	.989	41	.925	67	.830
16	.987	42	.922	68	.827
17	.986	43	.919	69	.823
18	.984	44	.915	70°	.819
19	.982	45	.912	75	.800
20	.980	46	.908	80	.781
21	.979	47	.905	85	.762
22	.977	48	.902	90	.743
23	.974	49	.898	95	.725
24	.972	50	.894	100	.707
25	.970	51	.890	105	.690
26	.968	52	.887	110	.673
27	.965	53	.883	115	.656
28	.963	54	.880	120	.640
29	.960	55	.876	125	.625
30	.958	56	.872	130	.610
31	.955	57	.868	135	.595
32	.952	58	.865	140	.581
33	.950	59	.861	150	.555
34	.941	60	.857		
35	.944	61	.853		

^a Interpolate for slopes between 70 and 150%.

Total height (TOTAL HT):

The total height of the tree = HT + HT TO DBH

Note the following example calculation:

TOP = +62, BOT = -24, TOP - BOT = 62 - (-24) = 86

SD = 20.5 m, SL = 23%, slope distance factor (from table) = 0.974

 $HD = SD \times slope distance factor = 20.5 \times 0.974 = 20.0$

 $HT = [(TOP - BOT) \times HD] \div 100 = (86 \times 20.0) \div 100 = 17.2 \text{ m}$

HT TO DBH = 1.3 m

Total height = HT + HT TO DBH = 17.2 + 1.3 = 18.5 m

6. Age at Breast Height

Measure age at breast height, 1.3 m above the ground on the high side. The core must show the pith for the age to be accurate. Depending on the requirements of the project, counts may be done in the field using a hand lens. If greater accuracy is required, place the core in a plastic straw labelled with the plot and tree number and determine age later in the office. In some cases a microscope may be required to achieve an accurate count.

7. Site Index

Calculate site index (reference age 50) using the *Site Tools (version 3)* software available from MOF Research Branch.

8. Suppression

Ideally, trees selected for measurement should be free of suppression. If this is not the case, indicate by entering an "S" here, otherwise leave blank.

9. Pathological Indicators

Defects and pathological indicators are frequently signs of decay or rot in the wood. Identify the type of defect and determine if it is "suspect" (i.e., a probable indicator of decay). If suspect, enter a code under the type of defect observed, and indicate its location on the tree using the codes in Table 4.2.

TABLE 4.2. Defect location codes

Code	Defect occurrence on tree
1	Lower third only
2	Middle third only
3	Upper third only
4	Lower and middle thirds
5	Middle and upper thirds
6	Lower and upper thirds
7	Entire tree

Conks:

Fruiting bodies of stem decay fungi are reliable indicators of decay. They are typically thick, hard, and woody-like perennial structures that may appear anywhere on the main stem or branches, but that usually appear around knots and on the underside of dead branch stubs and live branches.

Blind conks:

"Swollen knots" (see Figure 4.1) are reliable indicators of decay. They appear as pronounced swellings or depressions around knots and are thought to represent an attempt to heal over decay emerging though a knot or branch stub. Bright yellow or buff-coloured material is found by chopping into basal branch stubs. Blind conks most often occur in the Interior.

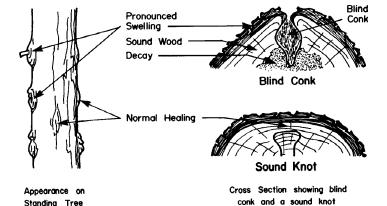


FIGURE 4.1. Blind conk and sound knot, on a standing tree and in crosssection.

Scars:

Scars result from past injuries caused by external forces that have damaged the cambium or heartwood, exposing the tree to wood decay fungi. These scars are considered suspect if located on the main stem or root collar, unless they are of recent origin (Figures 4.2 and 4.3).

Scars may be open or closed. *Open scars* are areas of exposed wood of varying size and shape from severe damage caused by fire, lightning, logging, machinery, etc. *Closed scars* may appear healed over, with slight to pronounced indentations of the bark, or there may be pronounced scar tissue or callous growth, often with abundant resin flow.

Several common types of scars are described below.

Fire scars – may appear as indentations, open catfaces, or hollowing of the trunk; usually confined to base of trunk.

Lightning scars – extensive damage to the trunks and tops of trees; strips of torn wood typically observed, often extending the entire length of the tree in a spiral.

Falling-tree scars – the fallen tree generally found against or near the scarred tree.

Logging or other machinery scars – selective cutting operations may cause extensive damage; usually on the base of the trunk, or the upper portion of the trunk if caused by rigging.

Old blazing – frequent entry points for wood-rotting fungi; do not record recent blazing.

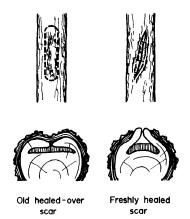


FIGURE 4.2. Appearance of scars that are old or freshly healed.

Scars caused by breakage – scars on trunks from the breakage of live branches or secondary leaders; breakage caused by high winds, heavy snow, or branches falling from adjacent trees.

Animal or bird scars – for example, woodpeckers can make large, deep holes in the trunk; bears, deer, moose, and elk may remove areas of bark and cambium; scars can be caused by bear claws and gnawing by beavers or other rodents.

Cankers caused by fungi – results in the death of localized areas of bark and cambium (Figure 4.4); dead bark is sloughed off, exposing underlying wood; usually evidence of repeated callous growth; may be mistaken for "mechanical" scars; usually flattened, elongated, and of irregular shape; exposed wood often stained and impregnated with resin; fruiting bodies of the fungus may be visible.

Scars caused by rock slides or falling rock – usually confined to base of trunk, however falling rock sometimes causes scars much higher on stem because of high snow levels or rocks bouncing; usually occur on the upslope side (Figure 4.5).





FIGURE 4.3. Appearance of scars with light or heavy damage.

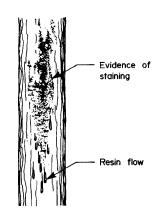




light damage

heavy damage

FIGURE 4.4. Appearance of cankers caused by fungi.



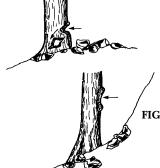


FIGURE 4.5. Appearance of scars caused by rock slides or falling rock.

Fork or crook (F or C):

Forks or crooks that develop after an early injury to the top of the tree are reliable indicators of decay (Figure 4.6). The following are not considered forks: candelabra branches; natural branching in deciduous trees; small, sharply angled branches or spikes, unless associated with a noticeable offset or diameter change at the location; flattening of tree tops caused by wind or physiological conditions where no terminal leaders are evident.

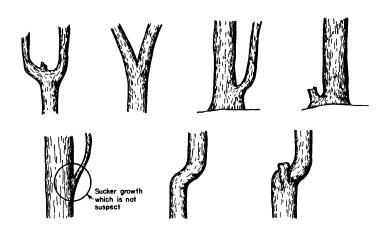


FIGURE 4.6. Appearance of different forms of forks and crooks.

Frost cracks (F. Crack):

Frost cracks are caused by uneven expansion of moisture in the tree following a sudden and pronounced drop in temperature. They result in deep radial splitting of the trunk and are considered suspect. Usually originating at the base of the trunk, frost cracks may extend many metres up the tree. These cracks are often re-opened by wind stresses or low temperatures; repeated healing of the wood produces considerable callous tissue, giving the wound a pronounced ribbed appearance (Figure 4.7).

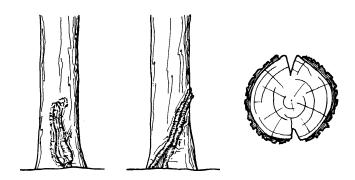


FIGURE 4.7. Appearance of frost crack on standing tree and in crosssection.

Mistletoe (Mistle):

Mistletoe infection may be indicated by either abnormal swelling or malformation of the trunk (see Figure 4.8A), or by clusters of dead and broken branches on the trunk, or on swollen branches adjacent to the trunk (see Figure 4.8B). Infection on branches should be noted only where swelling has extended to within 30 cm of the trunk (Figure 4.9).

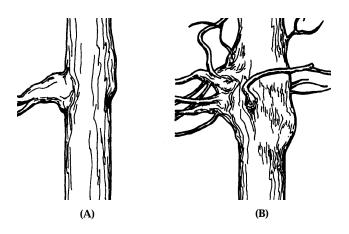
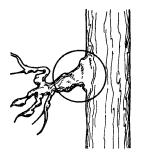
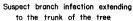
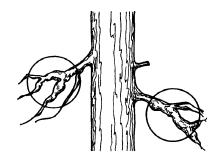


FIGURE 4.8. Examples of mistletoe infection.







Branch infection which is not Suspect

FIGURE 4.9. How to determine if mistletoe infection causes tree to be suspect.

Rotten Branch (R. Bran.):

Large, rotten branches, typically on old-growth trees often indicate decay. Note only those branches that are greater than or equal to 10 cm in diameter at the base and that are clearly rotten (usually on overmature trees) (see Figure 4.10A). Do not include small, dead branches typically just below the live crown or on the lower trunk of open-growntrees (see Figure 4.10B).

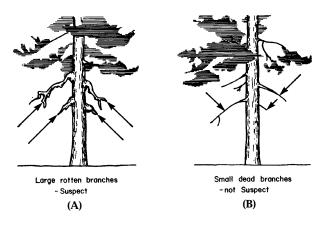


FIGURE 4.10. How to determine if rotten branches are a probable indicator of decay.

Dead or broken top (D. or B. Top):

These may be caused by wind, snow, mechanical damage from other falling trees, etc. Only note those not recent in origin (i.e., must be obviously weathered).

Non-suspect abnormalities:

The following features should *not* be recorded as "suspect" pathological indicators.

External evidence of butt rot not associated with suspect abnormalitiesButt rot may be evident in exposed roots or within root crotches. However, unless one or more abnormality which is considered suspect also appears on

the tree, do not consider butt rot as an indicator of decay.

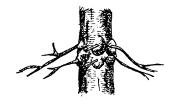
Flutes Pronounced flutes in the trunk (illustrated right) are characteristic of many species and do not signify decay.





Candelabra branches Candelabra branches (illustrated left) develop as a result of abnormal branch growth and do not signify decay. They may be confused with suspect forking; unlike forks, however, they do not originate in the trunk of a tree.

Branch fans A branch fan (illustrated right) develops through abnormal branching, appearing most commonly as a 'fan' of branches which originates from a burl-like swelling on the trunk. These are not considered suspect.



Black knots Black knots (illustrated right) frequently develop around unhealed knots and wounds. A superficial saprophytic fungus feeding on exuded sap causes the blackness. These do not signify decay.





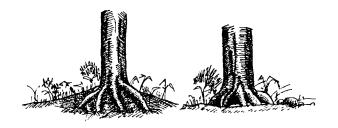


Burls and galls Burls and galls (illustrated left) develop from abnormal cell growth in trees. Although formidable in appearance, they do not signify decay.

Sweep Sweep refers to a slight curvature or distortion of the trunk (illustrated right). This does not indicate decay.



Exposed roots Exposed roots and buttress roots (shown below) do not signify decay unless scarring is present above the point of germination.



Spiral grain Spiral grain is a growth characteristic of some trees and does not signify decay.

Dry side Dry side results from the death of the cambium through bruising by other trees or other physiological causes. It appears as a narrow to wide strip or small localized area on the side of a tree, with the bark often remaining intact over the dead areas. Does not signify the presence of decay.

Sapsucker holes Sapsucker holes are superficial and do not signify decay. Do not confuse with the deeper scarring of woodpeckers.





Insect borings Borings by bark beetles or by other insects do not signify decay and are non-suspect.

10. Damage

Specify the type of damage agent and severity of effect on the tree. Damage agents may include insects, diseases, wildlife, competing vegetation, or abiotic agents. If more than one type occurs on the same tree, record the most damaging one.

Type of Damage (Type):

Specify the type of damage agent using codes listed in Appendix 4.2.

Severity of Damage (Sev.):

Rate the severity of the effect on the tree. Either assess subjectively using the following codes or leave blank (severity is difficult to assess without training).

L = Low

M = Moderate

S = Severe

P = Past attacks

11. Site Series

If the site is variable, enter the site series code for the area in a 4 m radius around the tree.

APPENDIX 4.1 Tree Species Codes

Conifers

Common name	Species	Code
Cedar	Thuja	
western redcedar	T. plicata	Cw
Cypress	Chamaecyparis	
yellow-cedar	C. nootkatensis	Yc
Douglas-fir	Pseudotsuga	
Douglas-fir	P. menziesii	Fd
interior Douglas-fir	P. menziesii var. glauca	Fdi
coast Douglas-fir	P. menziesii var. menziesii	Fdc
Fir (Balsam)	Abies	
amabilis fir	A. amabilis	Ba
grand fir	A. grandis	Bg
subalpine fir	A. lasiocarpa	Βĺ
Hemlock	Tsuga	
mountain hemlock	T. mertensiana	Hm
western hemlock	T. heterophylla	Hw
mountain x		
western hemlock hybrid	T. mertensiana x heterophylla	Hxm
Juniper	Juniperus	
Rocky Mountain juniper	Ĵ. scopulorum	Jr
Larch	Larix	
alpine larch	L. lyallii	La
tamarack	L. laricina	Lt
western larch	L. occidentalis	Lw
Pine	Pinus	
whitebark pine	P. albicaulis	Pa
limber pine	P. flexilis	Pf
jack pine	P. banksiana	Pj
lodgepole pine	P. contorta	ΡÌ
lodgepole x jack pine hybrid	P. x murraybanksiana	Pxj
shore pine	P. contorta var. contorta	Plc
lodgepole pine	P. contorta var. latifolia	Pli
western white pine	P. monticola	Pw
ponderosa pine	P. ponderosa	Py
Spruce	Picea	•
black spruce	P. mariana	Sb
Engelmann spruce	P. engelmannii	Se
white spruce	P. glauca	Sw
Sitka spruce	P. sitchensis	Ss
spruce hybrid	Picea cross	Sx
_ •		

Conifers

Common name	Species	Code	
Engelmann x white	P. engelmannii x glauca	Sxw	
Sitka x white	P. x lutzii	Sxl	
Sitka x unknown	P. sitchensis x ?	Sxs	
Yew	Taxus		
western yew	T. brevifolia	Tw	

Hardwoods

Common name	Species	Code
Alder	Alnus	
red alder	A. rubra	Dr
Apple	Malus	
Pacific crab apple	Malus fusca	Up
Aspen, Cottonwood, Poplar	Populus	•
poplar	P. balsamifera	Ac
balsam poplar	P. b. ssp. balsamifera	Acb
cottonwood	P. b. ssp. trichocarpa	Act
hybrid poplar	P. spp.	Ax
trembling aspen	P. tremuloides	At
Arbutus	Arbutus	
arbutus	A. menziesii	Ra
Birch	Betula	
Alaska paper birch	B. neoalaskana	Ea
Alaska x paper birch hybic	l B. x winteri	Exp
paper birch	B. papyrifera	Ep
water birch	B. occidentalis	Ew
Cascara	Rhamnus	
cascara	R. purshiana	Kc
Cherry	Prunus	
bitter cherry	P. emarginata	Vb
pin cherry	P. pensylvanica	Vp
choke cherry	P. virginiana	$\overline{\mathbf{V}}\mathbf{v}$
Dogwood	Cornus	
western flowering dogwood	C. nuttallii	Gp
Maple	Acer	
bigleaf maple	A. macrophyllum	Mb
vine maple	A. circinatum	Mv
Oak	Quercus	
Garry oak	Q. garryana	Qg

Hardwoods

Common name	Species	Code	
Willow	Salix		
peach-leaf willow	S. amygdaloides	Wa	
Bebb's willow	S. bebbiana	Wb	
pussy willow	S. discolor	Wd	
Pacific willow	S. lucida	Wp	
Scouler's willow	S. scouleriana	Ws	
Sitka willow	S. sitchensis	Wt	

Others

Common name	Species	Code
Unknown		
Unknown conifer		Xc
Unknown hardwood		Xh
Other tree, not on list		
Other conifer		Zc
Other hardwood		Zh

Exotics1

Common name	Species	Code
A 1	261	
Apple	Malus	
apple	Malus pumila	Ua
Aspen, Cottonwood or Pop	lar <i>Populus</i>	
*southern cottonwood	P. deltoides	Ad
Birch	Betula	
European birch	B. pendula	Ee
silver birch	B. pubescens	Es
Cherry	Prunus	
sweet cherry	P. avium	Vs
Cypress	Chamaecyparis	
*Port Orford-cedar	C. lawsoniana	Yp
Fir (Balsam)	Abies	
*balsam fir	A. balsamea	Bb
noble fir	A. procera	Вр
*Shasta red fir	A. magnifica var. shastensis	Bm
*white fir	A. concolor	Bc
Larch	Larix	
*Siberian larch	L. siberica	Ls
Maple	Acer	
box elder	A. negundo	Me

Exotics1

Common name	Species	Code	
*Norway maple	A. platanoides	Mn	
*Sycamore maple	A. pseudoplatanus	Ms	
Other exotics	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		
*incense-cedar	Calocedrus decurrens	Oa	
*giant sequoia	Sequoiadendron giganteum	Ob	
*coast redwood	Sequoia sempervirens	Oc	
European mountain-ash	Sorbus aucuparia	Od	
Siberian elm	Ulmus pumila	Oe	
common pear	Pyrus communis	Of	
Oregon ash	Fraxinus latifolia	Og	
Pine	Pinus	Ü	
*Monterey pine	P. radiata	Pm	
*red pine	P. resinosa	Pr	
*sugar pine	P. lambertiana	Ps	
Oak	Quercus		
*English oak	Q. robur	Qe	
Spruce	Picea	-	
*Norway spruce	P. abies	Sn	

 $^{^{\}rm I}$ (*) Introduced species not known to occur on Crown Land, but requiring a code for database purposes, are indicated with an asterisk.

APPENDIX 4.2 Damage Agent Codes

Damag	ge agent	code	Description
A			Animal Damage
	AB		Bear
	AC		Cattle
	AD		Deer
	AE		Elk
	AH		Hare or rabbit
	AM		Moose
	AP		Porcupine
	AS		Squirrel
	AV		Vole
	AX		Birds
	AZ		Beaver
D			Diseases
	DB		Broom rusts
	DD	DBF	Fir broom rust <i>Melampsorella caryophyllacearum</i>
		DBS	Spruce broom rust <i>Chrysomyxa arctostaphyli</i>
		220	Spruce broom ruse emysomym metostapnyn
	DD		Stem rot
		DDA	Artists conk Ganoderma applanatum
		DDB	Birch trunk rot Fomes fomentarius
		DDC	Cedar brown pocket rot Poria sericeomollis
		DDD	Sulfur fungus Laetiporus sulphureus
		DDE	Rust-red stringy rot Echinodontium tinctorium
		DDF	Brown crumbly rot Fomitopsis pinicola
		DDH	Hardwood trunk rot Phellinus igniarius
		DDP	Red ring rot Phellinus pini
		DDQ	Quinine conk rot Fomitopsis officinalis
		DDS	Schweinitzii butt rot <i>Phaeolus schweinitzii</i>
		DDT	Aspen trunk rot Phellinus tremulae
	DF		Foliage Disease
		DFA	Western pine aster rust Coleosporium asterum
		DFC	Large-spored spruce-Labrador tea rust <i>Chrysomyxa</i>
			ledicola
		DFD	Spruce needle cast Lirula macrospora
		DFE	Elytroderma needle rust Elytroderma deformans
		DFH	Larch needle cast Hypodermella laricis

Damage agent codes		Description
	DFL	Pine needle cast Lophodermella concolor
	DFM	Larch needle blight Meria laricis
	DFP	Fir-fireweed rust Pucciniastrum epilobii
	DFR	Douglas-fir needle cast Rhabdocline pseudotsugae
	DFS	Redband needle blight Mycosphaerella scirrhia pini
	DFT	Sirococcus tip blight Sirococcus strobilinus
	DFU	Cedar leaf blight Didymascella thujina
DL		Disease-caused Dieback of Leader
	DLD	Dermea canker Dermea pseudotsugae
	DLF	Red flag disease Potebniamyces balsamicola
	DLP	Phomopsis canker Phomopsis lokoyae
	DLS	Sydowia (sclerophoma) tip dieback Sclerophoma
		pithyophila
	DLV	Aspen-poplar twig blight Venturia spp.
DM		Dwarf Mistletoe
	DMF	Douglas-fir dwarf mistletoe Arceuthobium douglasii
	DMH	Hemlock dwarf mistletoe Arceuthobium tsugense
	DML	Larch dwarf mistletoe Arceuthobium laricis
	DMP	Lodgepole pine dwarf mistletoe Arceuthobium
		americanum
DR		Root Disease
	DRA	Armillaria root disease Armillaria ostoyae
	DRB	Black stain root disease Leptographium wageneri
	DRC	Laminated root rot, cedar strain Phellinus weirii
	DRL	Laminated root rot Phellinus weirii
	DRN	Annosus root disease Heterobasidion annosum
	DRR	Rhizina root disease Rhizina undulata
	DRT	Tomentosus root rot Inonotus tomentosus
DS		Stem Disease (Bark Cankers and Rusts)
	DSA	Atropellis canker (Lodgepole pine) Atropellis
		piniphila
	DSB	White pine blister rust Cronartium ribicola
	DSC	Comandra blister rust Cronartium comandrae
	DSE	Sooty bark canker Encoelia pruinosa
	DSG	Western gall rust Endocronartium harknessii
	DSH	Hypoxylon canker Hypoxylon mammatum
	DSP	Cryptospaeria populina Cryptospaeria populina
	DSR	Ceratocystis canker Ceratocystis fimbriata

Damage agent codes	Description
DSS DST DSY	Stalactiform blister rust <i>Cronartium coleosporioides</i> Nectria canker <i>Nectria galligena</i> Cytospora canker <i>Cytospora chrysosperma</i>
I	Insects
IA IAB IAC IAG IAL IAS	Aphids Balsam woolly adelgid Adelges piceae Giant conifer aphid Cinara spp. Cooley spruce gall adelgid Adelges cooleyi Larch cone wooly aphid Adelges lariciatus Spruce aphid Elatobium abietinum Gall aphids or woolly aphids Adelges spp.
IB IBB IBD IBI IBM IBP IBS IBT IBW	Bark Beetles Western balsam bark beetle Dryocetes confusus Douglas-fir beetle Dendroctonus pseudotsugae Engraver beetles Ips spp. Mountain pine beetle Dendroctonus ponderosae Twig beetles Pityogenes, Pityophthorus spp. Spruce beetle Dentroctonus rufipennis Red turpentine beetle Dendroctonus valens Western pine beetle Dendroctonus brevicomis
ID IDA IDB IDC IDD IDE IDF IDG IDH IDI IDL IDM IDN IDP IDR IDS IDT IDU IDV	Defoliators Black army cutworm Actebia fennica 2-year cycle budworm Choristoneura biennis Larch casebearer Coleophora laricella Western winter moth Erannis tiliaria vancouverensis Eastern spruce budworm Choristoneura fumiferana Forest tent caterpillar Malacosoma disstria Greenstriped forest looper Melanolophia imitata Western blackheaded budworm Acleris gloverana Pine needle sheath miner Zellaria haimbachi Western hemlock looper Lambdina fiscellaria lugubrosa Gypsy moth Lymantria dispar Birch leaf miner Fenusa pusilla Larch sawfly Pristiphora erichsoni Red alder sawfly Eriocampa ovata Conifer sawflies Neodiprion spp. Douglas-fir tussock moth Orgyia pseudotsugata Satin moth Leucoma salicis Variegated cutworm Peridroma saucia

Damage agent codes		Description	
	IDW IDX IDZ	Western spruce budworm <i>Choristoneura occidentalis</i> Large aspen tortrix <i>Choristoneura conflictana</i> Western false hemlock looper <i>Nepytia freemani</i>	
IS	ISB ISE ISG ISP ISQ ISS	Shoot Insects Western cedar borer Trachykele blondeli European pine shoot moth Rhyaconia buoliana Gouty pitch midge Cecidomyia piniiopis Pitch nodule moths Petrova spp. Sequoia pitch moth Vespamina sequoiae Western pine shoot borer Eucosma sonomana	
IW	IWC IWM IWP IWS IWW IWY	Root and Terminal Weevils Conifer seedling weevil Steremnius carinatus Magdalis spp. Lodgepole pine terminal weevil Pissodes terminalis White pine weevil (on spruce) Pissodes strobi Warren's root collar weevil Hylobius warreni Cylindrocopturus weevils Cylindrocopturus spp. Yosemite bark weevil Pissodes schwartzi	
M		Mites Trisetacus spp.	
N		Non-biological Injuries	
NB ND NF NG NH NK NL NN NR NS	NGC NGH NGK	Frost heaved	

Damage agent codes		t codes	Description
	NW		Windthrow
		NWS	Windthrow soil failure
		NWT	Windthrow treatment or harvesting related
	NY		Snow or ice (includes snow press)
	NZ		Sunscald
0			No Detectable Abiotic or Biotic Damage
T			Treatment Injuries
	TC		Chemical
	TH		Harvested
	TL		Logging
	TP		Planting
		TPM	Poor microsite planting
	TM		Other mechanical damage (non-logging)
	TR		Pruning
	TT		Thinning or spacing
V			Vegetation Problems
	VH		Herbaceous competition
	VP		Vegetation press
	VS		Shrub competition
	VT		Tree competition

5 WILDLIFE HABITAT ASSESSMENT

Contents

		Page
Wildl	life Habitat Assessment Form	3
Field	Procedure	5
Comp	pleting the Form	6
1.	Project ID	6
2.	Date	6
3.	Plot Number	6
4.	Surveyor(s)	6
5.	Non-habitat features	6
6.	Page of	7
7.	Species	7
8.	Habitat Use	8
9.	Plot-type Assessment	10
10.	Plot-in-context Assessment	11
11.	Suitability	17
12.	Comments	17
Evide	ence of Use	18
13.	Species	18
14.		18
15.	Life Stage	18
16.		19
17.	Descriptor	22
18.	Number	22
19.	Comments	22
Abbr	eviated Tree Attributes for Wildlife	23
20.	Basal Area Factor	23
21.	Area	23
22.	Minimum DBH	23
23.	Number of Trees	23
24.	Number of Dead Trees	24
25.	Number of Live Trees	24
26.	Average DBH	24
27.	Average Length	24
28.	Average Lichen Loading Class	25
29.	Comments	25

		Page
Simp	le Coarse Woody Debris Assessment	26
30.	Sampled _ of 30 m Transect	26
31.	Decay Class	26
32.	Diameter Class	28
33.	Comments	28
Mana	agement	29
34.	Species	29
35.	Úse	29
36.	Season	29
37.	Food/Cover Life Requisite	29
38.	Capability	29
39.	Management Techniques	30
40.	Management Feasibility and Intensity	30
41.	Comments/Notes	30
A		
Арр е 5.1	e ndix Wildlife subspecies, species, and species group codes	not
3.1	included in Cannings and Harcombe (1990)	31
	included in Camings and Harcombe (1990)	31
Table	es	
5.1	Codes for types of non-habitat features	7
5.2	Codes for distances to nearest non-habitat features	7
5.3	Specified life requisite codes	8
5.4	Codes for season of use	9
5.5	Relative quality classes for assessing the plot type	
	quality relative to the best in B.C.	10
5.6	Habitat features codes for plot-in-context assessment . 11	
5.7	Confidence level codes for assessment of habitat features	15
5.8	Food/cover life requisite codes	15
5.9	Impact of habitat feature on suitability rating	16
5.10	Codes for life stages for wildlife evidence of use	18
5.11	Codes for activities and signs of activity	19
5.12	Codes for descriptors of wildlife evidence of use	22
5.13	Decay classes for coarse woody debris	27
5.14	Diameter classes for coarse woody debris	28
5.15	Codes for management techniques to achieve capability	30
5.16	Management feasibility/intensity codes for identified	
	management techniques	30
Figui		
5.1	Top view of biologist standing at center of plot and	
	estimating the area covering a quarter of the plot and	
	the number of trees in a quarter plot	24

MBIA . 3 Species Hab use / Ssn Plottype	S. Ssn. FD SH TH Co	8	-	-	-	-	-		-		-	-	-			-	-			Comments / Notes	
	SH TH Com			-		_					_		_			_					
	SH TH Com	S																			
Surveyo	SH TH Com	9																			
Surveyo	SH TH Com	9																			
	шоЭ																				
	_			\dashv		\dashv															
													_							l	
	Habitat feature	T.	-	7	-	-	-	-			-		-	7	-	-	-	-	_		
	.inoO																				
Date	Uistance (km)	-	-	-	-	-	-	•	-	•	-	-	•	•			-	-	-		
	L.R.																				
	<u>ġ</u> (3																			
	Habitat	-		-	-	-	-	_	-	_	$\frac{1}{2}$	-	+	+	-	+	-	-	_		
□	.înoO																				
N-hab. feature	Uistance (km)	1		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•		
~ o																					
dst.	L.R. Imp.	-																			
$ \Theta $	p. FD	\perp													_			_			
	SH TH Suit.																				
oged of																					

	-		No. Com.	€)_								m of 30 m transect	10 11		10 11									
	-		Des. N										n of 30 n	6		0									
	-	em unit	Activity	_	_	-	_	_	_	-				~		ω									
	-	Outside plot and inside ecosystem unit	Life Stage										Sampled (30	9		9									
	-	inside	Sex										Sam	2		ω				Se					
	Plot no.	plotand	No.	(18))								ebris	4		4				Comments / Notes		(41))		
	Ā	utside	, Des.	(1))								ody D	6	(a)	m				Comme		\bigcup			
			Activity	(<u>J</u>)-	-	_	-	-	-			Simple Coarse Woody Debris	<u>`</u>	32) -		33)		/Int			\exists		
			Life Stage	(15)									ple Co	Decay class 31	Diam. class	Piece # Decay class	Diam. class	Comments (33		M. Feat	-{	(40 (40)	_	
		L	. Sex	4	<u>) </u>								Sim	Decay	Diam	Decay	Diam	Comr		Cap. Mgmt. Tech. M. Feat/Int	-((39)) -		
		Г	No. Com.	(18) (19)	<u>) </u>									60	200	_	-			ap. Mgm		(38)			
		Ļ	Des. N	17	<u>ر</u>								fe	HH	⁶ (25)	(2))				1		_		
		Inside plot	Activity	(Je)	_								rWildli	Min DBH	No. live				ent	F/C LR(s)	-((37)) -		
		٤											utes fo		4	Avg. length (m)	(8)		Management	Ssn.	((36))		
			Sex Life Stage	14 (15)) 								Attrib		(24)	/∢	Comments		W	Use	4	35) -	-	
			S	7	_								Abbreviated Tree Attributes for Wildlife	Area 101	No. deac	-	Com						-		
		Jse	s	- 	- 	_					tes		breviat			(S)	78			group)					
⊣ štA	-	Evidence of Use	Species	(E)) -	_	_	_	4	_	Comments / Notes		ΑÞ		23) (GW) H	ad class			Species (Sp. group)	(34)	-	ń
BRITISH OLUMBIA	Project id.	Evide		-	-	-	_	-	-	-	Comm			B.A.E. (20		Avg. DBH (cm)	Avg. lich load class 28			Spe	-	-	-	-	1,000
S C	4	L		L	NE	31/	IS	S	38	SS	A	T	A٦		1-		_		D D	ال	Μ				, , ,
74. 3	••• WILDLIFE HABITAT ASSESSMENT																								

FS 882 (5) HRE 98/5

Field Procedure

Getting Started

- 1. Determine plot boundaries in consultation with other surveyors.
- Become familiar with the character of the terrain, soil, and vegetation by traversing the plot and consulting with plant ecologist and soil scientist.

Record and Classify

- 1. Enter the date, plot number and name(s) of wildlife surveyor(s).
- Record evidence of use in plot and in ecosystem unit represented by the plot.
- 3. List project species and additional species noted during visit.
- 4. Record habitat use and season for each species.
- Confer with plant ecologist and soil scientist about site classification, values, and site management concerns.
- 6. Ensure that relevant wildlife habitat data is filled out on the site description and vegetation forms.
- Complete coarse woody debris and tree attributes for wildlife forms, if required.
- Assess the value of the plot-type for each species (not necessary for incidentally recorded species). Be sure that the plot-type assessment is completed before the plot-in-context assessment.
- 9. Assess the value of the plot-in-context for each species based on the spatial context of the plot.
- Record comments at the bottom of the form, cross-referencing to species.
- 11. Photograph the plot to illustrate important wildlife habitat features or evidence of animal use.
- 12. Check that all the required information has been collected and noted on the form. Strike through any fields that were not assessed.

Completing the Form

The purpose of this form is to assess habitat for its value to wildlife and to record evidence of its usage by wildlife. For inventories of wildlife populations, use forms provided in *Standardized Inventory Methodologies for Components of British Columbia's Biodiversity* (Resources Inventory Committee: Elements Working Group 1996) manuals. To record observations of wildlife outside of the ecosystem unit represented by the plot, use the Wildlife Sighting Form available from the B.C. Conservation Data Centre. The Wildlife Sighting Form should be used for observations of all Red and Blue-listed species.

Numbered items below refer to circled numbers on the Wildlife Habitat Assessment Form shown at the beginning of this section. A recommended sequence for completing the form is described under "Field Procedure."

1. Project ID

Identify the project as shown on the Site Description form.

2. Date

Enter the two-digit codes for year, month, and day.

3. Plot Number

Record the plot number from the top of the Site Description Form.

4. Surveyor(s)

Enter the first initial and last name and of each person involved in completing this form.

5. Non-habitat Features

Enter up to two types of human activity or other non-habitat feature (N-hab. feat.) near the plot that may affect usage by wildlife. A non-habitat feature is a feature of the environment that influences the amount of use of the plot by wildlife. A non-habitat feature can be distinguished from a habitat feature because non-habitat features do not affect habitat attributes (i.e., something measurable to describe habitat) and therefore do not affect suitability.

Type:

Identify the type of prolonged human activity or other non-habitat feature near the plot using the codes in Table 5.1.

TABLE 5.1. Codes for types of non-habitat features ^a

Code	Туре
ΑI	Airport (e.g., noise from airplanes and human presence)
FA	Farming
FE	Fence
GD	Garbage dump
LO	Logging activity
MI	Mining activity
OT	Other (specify under "Comments")
RF	Road traffic, four lanes
RO	Road traffic, one lane
RN	Railroad (e.g., noise from trains and human presence)
RT	Road traffic, two lanes
RR	Rural (e.g., pressure from human activity)
UR	Urban/suburban (city, town, village) (e.g., pressure from
	human activity)

This is not a comprehensive list of non-habitat features. For example, disease and depredation are also examples of non-habitat features that would influence plot-type usage. Such non-habitat features which are difficult to identify can be noted under the comments section.

Distance:

Enter a code (1–5) indicating the approximate distance (dst.) from the plot to the nearest sites of prolonged human activity or other non-habitat features which may affect wildlife.

TABLE 5.2. Codes for distances to nearest non-habitat features.

Code	Distance
1	0-100 m
2	100-250 m
3	250-1000 m
4	1–5 km
5	> 5 km

6. Page ___ of ___

If more than one Wildlife Habitat Assessment Form is required for this plot, enter the number of forms used as a total and number each page.

7. Species

Indicate the species for which the habitat is being assessed. Use the fiveletter codes from Cannings and Harcombe (1990), plus additional codes given in Appendix 5.1.

8. Habitat Use

For each habitat use (Hab use) to be assessed, use one row on the form.

Specified Life Requisite:

Specify the life requisite (SpLR) for which the habitat will be used with a two-letter code from Table 5.3.

TABLE 5.3. Specified life requisite codes

	-	-
Code	Specified life requisite	Description
AP ^a	Avoiding pests	Habitat used for avoiding pests; e.g., caribou use snow fields to avoid insects in summer
со	Courting	Habitat used for courting; involves enticing a conspecific of the opposite sex into copulation, courtship feeding, and defense of mates
DE	Denning/ Roosting	Habitat used for sleeping or hiding in a cavity, cave, or burrow; does not include hibernating nor reproducing-birthing
FS	Feeding - Salmon	Habitat used for feeding on fish during a salmonid run
ні	Hibernating	Habitat used for hibernating
LI ^a	Living	Habitat used for activities other than; denning, birthing, courting etc.
\mathbf{MD}^{a}	Migrating daily	Habitat used for regular, daily travelling, including travelling away from or towards a communal habitat; e.g., habitat used by a bat for daily flights to and from a roosting site
MS ^a	Migrating seasonally	Habitat used for regular, annual travelling; e.g., habitat used by elk for spring and fall migrations, or habitat used for travelling away from or towards a communal habitat such as a hibernaculum

RB	Reproducing - Birthing	Habitat used specifically for giving birth to live young; e.g., caribou use specialized habitat for birthing but beaver do not; habitat used by amphibians, birds, and reptiles for hatching of eggs is recorded as habitat used for reproduction by eggs (RE)
RE	Reproducing - Eggs	Habitat used for building a nest, laying eggs, incubation, hatching, and feeding non-mobile young; reserved for amphibians, birds, and reptiles; specialized habitat used by some mammals to give birth to young is recorded as reproducing-birthing (RB) habitat
SG ^a	Staging	Habitat used for staging during spring or fall migrations

^a Activities for which a season needs to be indicated (see below). The season is implied for all other activities.

Season:

If required, indicate the season (Ssn.) for which the habitat is being assessed. Use codes listed in Table 5.4. Consult *B.C. Wildlife Rating Standards* (Resources Inventory Committee: Wildlife Interpretations Subcommittee 1998) for recommended season coding system for each species.

TABLE 5.4. Codes for season of use

Code	Season	Code	Season
A	All seasons	WE ^a	Early Winter
G	Growing	WL^a	Late Winter
W	Winter	PE ^a	Early Spring
P	Spring	PL^a	Late Spring
S	Summer		
F	Fall		

^a Early Spring, Late Spring, Early Winter and Late Winter seasons should only be used for M-URAR, M-URAM and M-RATA. Also, Early Spring can be used to distinguish Early Spring feeding habitat from Spring feeding habitat for M-ODVI and M-ODHE.

9. Plot-Type Assessment

Assess the food, security habitat and thermal habitat provided by the plot type for the species, use and season being considered. For these assessments, disregard plot size and shape, and position relative to other habitats. Instead, imagine that the plot type covers a sufficiently large area to maximize its value for the species, use and season being considered. This data will be used to establish suitability ratings for the ecosystem unit represented by the plot. For assessments of relative quality and suitability use codes in Table 5.5.

For species where it is known that thermal habitat plays a significant role in overall suitability, but for which thermal qualities of the plot type cannot be assessed separately from the security qualities, do not attempt to enter a rating in the TH column—only use the SH column to enter a rating.

TABLE 5.5. Relative quality classes for assessing the plot type quality relative to the best in B.C.

Class	Suitability/ capability	Lower limit (%)	Upper limit (%)	Quality
1	High	> 75	≤100	Equivalent
2	Mod. high	> 50	≤ 75	Slightly less
3	Moderate	> 25	≤ 50	Moderately less
4	Low	> 5	≤ 25	Substantially less
5	Very low	> 0	≤ 5	Much less
6	Nil	0	0	Habitat or attribute
				is absent

Food:

For species that require food (FD) for the use and season being considered, rate the ability of the plot type to fulfill food requirements.

Security habitat:

For species that require security habitat (SH) for the use and season being considered, rate the ability of the plot type to fulfill security requirements.

Thermal habitat:

For species that require thermal habitat (TH) for the use and season being considered, rate the ability of the plot type to fulfill thermal requirements.

Comments:

To provide additional information about the plot-type assessment, or to clarify an entry made on this line, enter a numeric code (Com.). Enter the same code in the Comments/Notes section of the form, followed by the pertinent information.

10. Plot-in-Context Assessment

Given the location of the plot, assess the quality and accessibility of food, security and thermal habitat for the species, use, and season being considered. This assessment includes the adjacent habitat features that are accessible to the species, for the specified use and season. The data will be used to develop a suitability rating for the specific plot in the area. For assessments of quality and suitability use coding from Table 5.5.

Habitat features:

A habitat feature is a feature of the environment that influences the amount of use of the plot by providing food, security or thermal habitat and thereby affects suitability (e.g., a nearby agricultural field may provide food and influence plot usage). Enter up to two habitat features (Table 5.6) that may affect suitability of the plot.

TABLE 5.6. Habitat features codes for plot-in-context assessment^a

Code	Habitat feature	e Definition
AL*	Alkaline pond	Body of fresh water with a pH greater than 7 and a depth less than 2 $\ensuremath{m^{\scriptscriptstyle 1}}$
AS	Aspect	Area which has an aspect associated with it, in which the aspect is the attribute important to the species, use, and season being considered
BE*	Beach	Area of sorted sediments reworked in recent time by wave action; at the edge of fresh or salt water bodies 2
BF *	Blockfields, Blockslopes, Blockstreams	Level or gently sloping areas covered with moderately sized or large, angular blocks of rock derived from the underlying bedrock or drift by weathering and/or frost heave ¹
BU	Building	
CA*	Canal	Artificial watercourse created for transport, drainage, and/or irrigation purposes
CB *	Cutbank	Part of a road corridor or river course situated upslope of the road or river; created by excavation and/or erosion of the hillside 2
CF*	Cultivated field	Flat or gently rolling, non-forested, open area subject to human agricultural practices

Code	Habitat feature	Definition				
Code	Habitat leature	Definition				
CH	Clearcut, herbaceo	ous				
CL*	Cliff	Steep, vertical or overhanging rock face $\!\!^3$				
CO *	Cultivated orchard	Agricultural area of fruit trees planted in rows				
CS	Clearcut, shrubby					
CU	Clearcut, unvegeta	ated				
CV *	Cultivated vineyard	Agricultural area of grapes planted in rows				
ES*	Exposed soil	Area of exposed soil; not included in any of the other definitions $\!\!^{2}$				
ET	Electrical transmission line					
EY	Estuary					
FC	Forest, commercia	lly thinned				
FE	Fence					
FM	Forest, mature					
FO	Forest, old					
FY	Forest, young					
GB*	Gravel bar	Elongated landform generated by waves and currents; a mix of cobbles, pebbles, stones, and/or sand				
GC *	Golf course	Grass-covered fairways and open areas for the playing of golf				
GL*	Glacier	Mass of perennial snow and ice ²				
GP*	Gravel pit	Area exposed for the removal of sand and gravel ²				
GR	Grassland					

Code	Habitat feature	Definition
LA*	Lake	Naturally occurring, static body of water > 2 m deep $(> 50 \text{ ha})^2$
LB*	Lava bed	Area where molten rock has flowed from a volcano or fissure and cooled to form solidified rock^2
MI*	Mine	Unvegetated area for the extraction of mineral ore and other materials ¹
MO *	Moraine	Unvegetated landform of unstratified glacial drift ⁴
MU*	Mudflat sediment	Flat plain-like areas of fine-textured sediment ²
NB	Nest boxes	
ОТ	Other	
OW*	Shallow open water	Wetland of permanent shallow open water (< 2 m deep); lacking extensive emergent plant cover
PA	Pasture	
PD*	Pond	A small body of water > 2 m deep (< 50 ha)
PI	Pipeline right-of-v	vay
PS*	Permanent snow	Snow or ice, not part of a glacier, but found during summer months ²
RD	Ridge	Area which has a ridge associated with it; the ridge is the feature important to the species, use, and season being considered
RE*	Reservoir	Artificial basin created by the impoundment of water behind a human-made structure such as a dam, berm, $dyke$, or $wall^2$
RI*	River	Watercourse formed when water flows between continuous, definable banks²
RN *	Railway surface	Roadbed with fixed rails for possibly single or multiple rail lines ²

Habitat featu	ıre Definition
Rock outcrop	Gentle to steep, bedrock escarpment or outcropping, with little soil development and sparse vegetation
Road surface	Area cleared and compacted for vehicle transport $\!\!^2$
Rural	Area of residences and other human developments scattered and intermingled with forest, range, farm land, and native vegetation or cultivated crops¹
Rubble	Small angular rock fragments (between 2 and 256 mm) deposited by gravity or ice $^{2.4}$
Saltwater	Body of water that contains salt or is considered to be $salty^2 \\$
Talus	Large angular rock fragments at the foot of steep rock slopes as a result of successive rock falls ^{2,4}
Urban/ suburban	Area of residences and other human developments form an almost continuous ${\rm cover}^{\rm I}$
	Rock outcrop Road surface Rural Rubble Saltwater Talus Urban/

VH Avalanche track, herbaceous

VS Avalanche track, shrubby

This is not a comprehensive list of habitat features. Other habitat features can be recorded by using the OT code and adding a comment.

^b To identify old, mature and young forest, refer to definitions provided in Item 23, Site Description section.

^{*} Habitat features derived from TABLE 3.1 Symbology and definitions for non-vegetated, sparsely vegetated, and anthropogenic units in Standards for Terrestrial Ecosystem Mapping in B.C.

adapted from Dunster and Dunster (1996)

² adapted from Resources Inventory Committee (1997)

³ adapted from Sinnemon (1994)

⁴ adapted from Howes and Kenk (1997)

Confidence:

Use the codes in Table 5.7 to identify a level of confidence (Conf.) in the assessment of habitat features, i.e., how confident you are that the habitat feature affects the species, use, and season being considered. Base this on your knowledge of the species' habitat requirements and on your knowledge of the quality and quantity of habitat present in the habitat feature.

TABLE 5.7. Confidence level codes for assessment of habitat features

Code	Level of confidence	Description
1	Confident	Excellent knowledge of habitat attributes available in the habitat feature and of species' habitat requirements
2	Moderately confident	Excellent knowledge of habitat attributes available in the habitat feature and moderate knowledge of species' habitat requirements; or , moderate knowledge of habitat attributes available in the habitat feature and excellent knowledge of species' habitat requirements
3	Not confident	Moderate knowledge of habitat attributes available in the habitat and of species' habitat requirements

Distance:

Indicate, in kilometers, the distance from plot center to the habitat feature.

Food/Cover life requisite:

Identify the food/cover life requisite (F/C L.R.) (Table 5.8) that the described habitat feature provides. If the habitat feature provides more than one life requisite, then use a combination of codes (e.g., FS indicates that both food and security are provided by the habitat feature).

TABLE 5.8. Food/cover life requisite codes

Code	Food / cover life requisite	Definition
F	Food	Provides habitat used for consuming food items, including searching for and consuming food simultaneously such as is done by grazers, browsers, flying insectivores, ducks, and other species with similar feeding habits; includes habitat used for searching for, pursuing and killing prey

Code	Food / cover life requisite	Definition
S	Security	Provides habitat used for protection or hiding from predators
Т	Thermal	Provides habitat used for protection from heat, cold, or precipitation

Impact:

Assess the impact (Imp.) of the habitat feature using codes from Table 5.9. Given the presence of the habitat feature, the impact is a measurement of the increase or decrease in the quality and accessibility of the food/cover life requisite(s) relative to quality and accessibility if the plot type extended indefinitely.

TABLE 5.9. Impact of habitat feature on suitability rating

Code	Description
1	Large increase
2	Moderate increase
3	Low increase
4	No effect
5	Low decrease
6	Moderate decrease
7	Large decrease

Food:

Considering the context of the plot, for species that require food (FD) for the use and season being considered, rate the overall quality and accessibility of food. Use coding from Table 5.5.

Security habitat:

Considering the context of the plot, for species that require security habitat (SH) for the use and season being considered, rate the overall quality and accessibility of security habitat. Use coding from Table 5.5.

Thermal habitat:

Considering the context of the plot, for species that require thermal habitat (TH) for the use and season being considered, rate the overall quality and accessibility of thermal habitat. Use coding from Table 5.5.

11. Suitability

Assign a suitability rating (Suit.), using the codes in Table 5.5, for the plot-in-context, for the species, use, and season being considered. Base the suitability on the ratings entered in the food (FD), security habitat (SH), and thermal habitat (TH) columns. Theoretically, the suitability rating should be an average or weighted average of the three food/cover life requisite ratings.

12. Comments

To provide additional information about the habitat assessment, or to clarify an entry on this line on the form, enter a numeric code (Com). Enter the same code in the Comments/Notes section of the form, followed by the pertinent information.

Evidence of Use

Complete this section if there is any evidence of use by wildlife. Evidence of use can be in the plot boundaries or in the ecosystem unit represented by the plot.

13. Species

Indicate the species for which the evidence of use is being recorded. Use the five-letter codes from Cannings and Harcombe (1990), plus additional codes given in Appendix 5.1.

14. Sex

Note the sex of the animal. Code as M (male), F (female), or U (unknown).

15. Life Stage

Record the life stage of the animal using the codes in Table 5.10. Note that these classes differ from those described in the *Standardized Inventory Methodologies for Components of B.C.'s Biodiversity* (Resources Inventory Committee: Elements Working Group 1996).

TABLE 5.10. Codes for life stages for wildlife evidence of use

Code	Life stage	Description
E	Egg	Amphibian, bird, insect, and reptile eggs
N	Nestling or neonate	Nestling birds and newly hatched or newborn newborn amphibians, birds, insects, mammals, and reptiles; only used when it is apparent that the nest site is within the plot type
J	Juvenile	Amphibian larvae, fledged birds before their first winter, insect larvae, and mammals older than neonates, but still requiring parental care; reptiles do not have a juvenile stage
S	Subadult	Animal that is older than the juvenile stage, does not require parental care, and has not reached sexual maturity; includes amphibians and reptiles which have not reached adult size, but have adult form; insects have no subadult stage
A	Adult	Old enough to breed
U	Undetermined	Life stage is unknown

16. Activity

Code up to three different types or signs of activity relevant to the identified species (Table 5.11). If an animal is present in the plot, *or* in the ecosystem unit represented by the plot, record the type of activity it is engaged in on the appropriate section of the form. If there are signs that an animal was present, record the type of activity which caused the signs.

TABLE 5.11. Codes for activities and signs of activity

Code	Activity	Description
AL ^a	Alert	Activity with the purpose of detecting predators; e.g., guard or sentry duty or a heads-up rigid stance
AN^b	Antler	\boldsymbol{A} cast, solid, annually deciduous horn of a cervid
AP	Avoiding pests	Avoiding pests; e.g., seeing caribou standing on snow fields during summer when insects are abundant
BA	Basking	Behaviour for the purpose of gathering warmth; e.g., a marmot or snake lying on warm rocks, or marmot hair and soiling stains on flat rocks
BE	Bedding	Bedding, sleeping, or resting above ground, including bedding for the purpose of cud chewing, and roosting and resting of birds
\mathbf{BP}^{b}	Body parts	Incidental portions of an animal's body which are left behind, but do not indicate the animal is dead; e.g., feathers, hairs, and shed skins; shed antlers are recorded as "AN"
BU	Building	Building a nest, bed, burrow, den, lodge, or other dwelling
CA	Casting	Discharging bodily waste from the mouth; e.g., an owl or snake casting pellets
CO	Courtship	Behaviour for the purpose of enticing a conspecific of the opposite sex into copulation, including copulation, courtship feeding, and defense of mates
CR ^b	Carcass	A carcass, or portions of a carcass, that indicates the animal is dead

Code	Activity	Description
DE	Denning	Sleeping or hiding in a cavity, cave, or burrow; does not include hibernating; if the same den is used for hibernating and general denning, record as hibernating
DI ^a	Disturbed	Behaviour for the purpose of avoiding the observer; use only if the activity before disturbance is not known
\mathbf{DR}^{a}	Drinking	Drinking
EX	Excreting	Discharging waste through the anus
FD	Feeding	Consuming food items, including feeding by animals that search for food and eat simultaneously; e.g., grazers, browsers, flying insectivores, and filter feeders; does not include hunting
FL	Fleeing	Hurried movement to avoid conspecifics or other animals; does not include fleeing to avoid the observer
FS	Feeding, salmonid	Feeding on salmonids, during a salmonid run
GR	Grooming	Behaviour for the purpose of arranging and protecting the fur, feathers, skin, etc., including scratching and rubbing of antler velvet
НІ	Hibernating	If the same den is used for hibernating and general denning, record as hibernating
HU	Hunting	Searching for, pursuing, and killing prey
IN	Incubation	Incubating, protecting, or laying eggs
LI	Living	Activity could not be specified due to ignorance or the activity was too diverse
MD	Migrating daily	Travelling that is a regular daily activity, including travelling to or away from a communal habitat; e.g., a bat on its daily flight to or from a roosting site

Code	Activity	Description
MS	Migrating seasonally	Travelling that is a regular annual activity; e.g., an elk or a Sandhill Crane on its migration route, or a snake travelling away from a communal habitat such as a hibernaculum
RB	Reproducing, birthing	Giving birth to live young; preparing a birthing reproduction site, such as a den
RE	Reproducing, eggs	Laying eggs (amphibians, reptiles and birds), building a nest, and feeding non-mobile young
RR	Rearing	Adults feeding neonates and juveniles
SH	Security habitat	Using habitat for protection or hiding from predators
ST	Security and/ or thermal	Using habitat for its security and/or thermal values; used when differentiating between the two values is difficult or impossible
TE	Territoriality	Behavior for the purpose of marking or defending a territory; e.g., singing, drumming, winnowing, howling, antler rubbing, wallowing, or scraping the ground
TF ^a	Travelling, flying	Used when the purpose of flying is not known; if known, use a more specific description such as hunting
TH	Thermal habitat	Using habitat for protection from heat, cold, or precipitation
TP	Travelling on a path	Walking on a trail that is embedded in the ground due to animals walking the same route for many years
TR	Travelling	Travelling by a method other than flying, swimming, and walking; usually used for animals that do not normally fly, swim, or walk; includes seeing an isolated track; does not include running if the purpose for running is known

Code	Activity	Description
TS ^a	Travelling, swimming	Used when the specific purpose of swimming is not known; if known, use a more specific description such as fleeing
TW	Travelling, walking	Used when the purpose of walking is not known; if known, use a more specific description such as migrating; does not include travelling on a path (see "TP")
UR	Urinating	Urinating

^a Code is only associated with seeing or hearing an animal

17. Descriptor

Maaning

Codo

Enter a coded descriptor (Des) that indicates whether the animal was observed or heard in the plot or ecosystem unit, or gives the probable age or season of the sign (Table 5.12).

TABLE 5.12. Codes for descriptors of wildlife evidence of use

Code	Wieaming
S	The animal was seen
Н	The animal was heard
F	Fresh sign (<1 week old)
Y	Sign is <1 year old but >1 week old
O	Old (>1 year old)
U	Undetermined (age of sign is unknown)
W	Sign is from the winter season
G	Sign is from the growing season

18. Number

Record the number (No.) of animals present or the number of sign elements. Codes for relative abundance can be used for sign elements instead of numbers (i.e., \mathbf{H} [high], \mathbf{M} [moderate], \mathbf{L} [low], or \mathbf{T} [trace]).

19. Comments

To provide additional information about the evidence of use, or to clarify an entry on this line on the form, enter a numeric code (Com). Enter the same code in the Comments/Notes section of the form, followed by the pertinent information.

b Code is only associated with sign of an animal

Abbreviated Tree Attributes for Wildlife

The purpose of this section of the form is to provide for a quick assessment of selected tree attributes for wildlife. The data recorded here is abbreviated and more qualitative than that collected using the detailed Tree Attributes for Wildlife Form (Section 6). Refer to Section 6 for information on selecting the sampling method. Once selected, the same sampling method should be used consistently throughout the project.

Also, refer to Section 6 for information on selecting the prism BAF or plot size, and minimum DBH. Once the prism or plot size is determined for the plot, complete appropriate sections of the Wildlife Habitat Assessment Form.

Field Procedures

- Establish plot center
- Stand at the plot center and estimate the number of trees in the plot as follows:
 - For a variable radius plot do a prism sweep while counting the number of trees in the plot.
 - For a fixed area plot stand at the plot center and while holding arms out at right angles to each other (Figure 5.1) estimate the area and number of trees in one quarter of the plot. Then turn 90 degrees and while holding arms out, repeat the estimate for the second quarter. Do this for all four quarters. Total the values to obtain the number of trees.
- Complete the Abbreviated Tree Attributes for Wildlife portion of the form based upon the trees selected in the step above.

20. Basal Area Factor

If a variable radius plot is used, enter the standard metric Basal Area Factor (BAF) in $\rm m^2/ha$.

21. Area

If a fixed area plot is used, enter the area of the plot, in m^2 .

22. Minimum DBH

Enter the minimum diameter at breast height (Min DBH) being used (in cm).

23. Number of Trees

Record the number of trees (No. of trees) in the variable radius or fixed area plot.

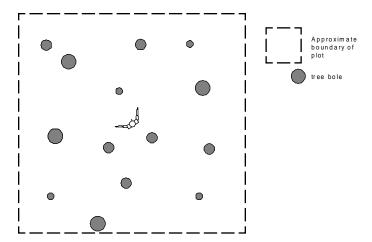


FIGURE 5.1. Top view of biologist standing at center of plot and estimating the area covering a quarter of the plot and the number of trees in a quarter plot.

24. Number of Dead Trees

Record the number of dead trees (No. dead) in the variable radius or fixed area plot.

25. Number of Live Trees

Record the number of live trees (No. live) in the variable radius or fixed area plot.

26. Average DBH

Visually estimate, and record to the nearest cm, the average diameter at breast height (Avg. DBH) of the trees in the variable radius or fixed area plot.

27. Average Length

Visually estimate, and record to the nearest m, the average length (Avg. length) of the trees in the variable radius or fixed area plot. The estimate must be within 15% of the true average length. A quick and accurate method of estimating tree length is as follows:

- · Mark a point 2 m in height from the base of the tree
- Move away from the tree so that the top of the tree is at an angle of 45°, or less.

- Tilt your head so that by rolling your eyes, and not moving your head, you can see the bottom and top of the tree.
- Hold a piece of twig or grass vertically between your thumb and index finger, and about 20 cm from your face. Adjust the length of the twig so that it spans the 2 m distance marked at the bottom of the tree.
- Move the twig upward vertically, and while rolling your eyes, count the number of twig-lengths that fit between the bottom of the tree and the top. When moving the twig upward it is important to keep the twig vertical and in the same plane, and your head still.
- Multiply the number of twig-lengths by two to obtain the length of the tree, in metres.

28. Average Lichen Loading Class

Visually estimate and record the average lichen loading class (Avg. lich load class) of the wildlife trees in the plot. Assign a rating (0–5) based on comparison with photos in *Estimating the Abundance of Arboreal Forage Lichens* (Armleder et al. 1992).

29. Comments

Record observations on tree attributes deemed to be of importance to wildlife.

Simple Coarse Woody Debris Assessment

The purpose of this section of the form is to provide for a quick assessment of total coarse woody debris volume and volume by decay classes following the methods developed by Taylor (1997). The detailed Coarse Woody Debris Form (Section 7) is used both to collect more quantitative data than that collected here and to collect more attributes.

To complete this section of the form, set up a 30 m line transect as follows:

- 1. Determine plot centre
- Establish one 30 m (horizontal distance) line transect following a random azimuth from the plot centre. It is important to measure the slope along the line and determine the slope distance required to produce a horizontal transect of 30 m. If significant slope changes occur along the line, more than one slope distance correction is required.
- 3. The slope distance factors in Table 4.1 can be used to calculate the required slope distance for a given slope. For example, if the slope is 35%, the slope distance factor is 0.944. The required slope distance is determined by dividing the horizontal distance by the slope distance factor, i.e., 30 m / 0.944 = 31.78 m.

30. Sampled __ of 30 m Transect

Indicate the length of the line that was sampled. The form has room to record 22 pieces of CWD. If more than 22 pieces are encountered on a 30 m transect, discontinue the transect and record the number of metres that were sampled to reach 22 pieces. If the entire line was sampled, indicate that all 30 m were sampled.

31. Decay Class

Assign a decay class (1 to 5) based on the majority condition of each piece encountered along the transect. See Table 5.13 for descriptions of classes.

TABLE 5.13. Decay classes for coarse woody debris

	Log decomposition class 1	Log decomposition class 2	Log decomposition class 3	Log decomposition class 4	Log decomposition class 5
	をはまる				
	Class 1	Class 2	Class 3	Class 4	Class 5
Portion on Ground	Elevated on support points	Elevated but sagging slightly	Sagging near ground, or broken	All of log on ground, sinking	All of log on ground, partly sunken
Twigs < 3 cm (if originally present)	Present	Absent	Absent	Absent	Absent
Bark	Intact	Intact or partly missing	Trace	Absent	Absent
Shape	Round	Round	Round	Round to oval	Oval
Texture	Intact, hard	Intact, hard to partly decaying	Hard, large pieces, partly decaying	Small, blocky pieces	Many small pieces, soft portions
Invading Roots	None	None	In sapwood	In heartwood	In heartwood

32. Diameter Class

Using the diameter class limits from Table 5.14, record the diameter class (Diam. class) at the point of intersection for each piece encountered along the transect.

TABLE 5.14. Diameter classes for coarse woody debris

Class	Range (cm)	Code	Range (cm)
10	>7.5 - 12.5	75	72.6 - 77.5
15	12.6 - 17.5	80	77.6 - 82.5
20	17.6 - 22.5	85	82.6 - 87.5
25	22.6 - 27.5	90	87.6 - 92.5
30	27.6 - 32.5	95	92.6 - 97.5
35	32.6 - 37.5	100	97.6 - 102.5
40	37.6 - 42.5	105	102.6 - 107.5
45	42.6 - 47.5	110	107.6 - 112.5
50	47.6 - 52.5	115	112.6 - 117.5
55	52.6 - 57.5	120	117.6 - 122.5
60	57.6 - 62.5	125	122.6 - 127.5
65	62.6 - 67.5	130	127.6 - 132.5
70	67.6 - 72.5	135	132.6 - 137.5

33. Comments

Record observations of interest or importance to making wildlife interpretations.

Management

This section is to be completed for species or species groups, according to the project objectives, for which specific management prescriptions may be implemented.

If the suitability of a habitat for a particular species (as evaluated in Item 11) is lower than its capability, it may be possible to apply habitat management techniques to achieve the capability of the habitat. Table 5.15 lists management practices of a low technological order, e.g., prescribed burning, livestock control, prescribed logging, that may be possible to prescribe in order to modify certain habitat conditions.

The approach is as follows: considering adjacent habitat features and the current value of the plot for a specific species, use, and season, how could the ecosystem unit represented by the plot be managed to optimize the suitability of the area?

34. Species

From the list of species evaluated on the plot, indicate the species for which the habitat could be managed. Use the five-letter codes as in Item 7.

35. Use

With a two-letter code from Table 5.3, indicate the specified life requisite for which the habitat will be managed. Use additional rows on the form to assess the habitat for more than one habitat use.

36. Season

If required, indicate the season (Ssn) for which the habitat will be managed. Use codes listed in Table 5.4.

37. Food/Cover Life Requisite

Identify the food/cover life requisite (F/C LR), using the codes in Table 5.8, that will be most affected by the management technique described below. If the management technique affects more than one life requisite, then use a combination of codes (e.g., FS indicates that both food and security are affected).

38. Capability

Considering the presence of habitat features, rate the capability (Cap) of the plot to meet the specified use in the specified season for the selected species or species group. Use the codes in Table 5.5. Capability is the ability of the habitat under optimal conditions to provide life requisites for the species.

It is assumed that the management techniques identified below will result in the habitat attaining these optimal conditions.

39. Management Techniques

Identify the management technique(s) (Mgmt. Tech.) from the list in Table 5.15 that would result in the assigned capability.

TABLE 5.15. Codes for management techniques to achieve capability

Code	Management technique
PF	Prescribed fire
MT	Mechanical treatment (slashing/brushing)
PL	Seeding & planting
TS	Thinning & spacing
SC	Selective cutting
CC	Clearcutting
PR	Protection (to maintain current conditions)
GR	Prescribed grazing
NG	No grazing
WL	Water level manipulation
NC	Nest construction
OT	Other

40. Management Feasibility and Intensity

Indicate the feasibility of management or the management intensity (M. Fea/Int) required to fulfill the objectives. Use the codes in Table 5.16.

TABLE 5.16. Management feasibility/intensity codes for identified management techniques

Code	Feasibility/intensity
NR	Not required; habitat is in optimum condition
IM	Impractical; desired changes would take too long
NA	Not appropriate; management would affect the ecosystem
CM	Constant management required (every 2-5 years)
FM	Frequent management required (every 5-10 years)
MM	Moderate management required (every 10-20 years)
IF	Infrequent management required (every 20-50 years)

41. Comments/Notes

Record comments that may assist in developing management prescriptions.

APPENDIX 5.1

Unspecified Mouse

Unspecified Vole

Wildlife subspecies, species and species group codes not included in Cannings and Harcombe (1990).

Subspecies codes are derived from the species code; the last letter of the species code is replaced with the first letter of the Latin subspecies name. Species Groups begin the four-letter group code with the letter "U" followed by three letters derived from the common name of the species group. (e.g., unspecified grouse = BUGRU.) Species names preceded by an asterix are in Cannings and Harcombe (1990), and are included here for convenience.

AMPHIBIANS AND REPTILES

Salamanders Unspecified Salamander	Order Caudata (unspecified)	A-USAL
Frogs and Toads Unspecified Frog	Order Anura (unspecified)	A-UFRO
Turtles Unspecified Turtle	Order Testudines (unspecified)	R-UTUR
Lizards Unspecified Lizard	Order Squamata (unspecified)	R-ULIZ
Snakes Unspecified Snake	Order Serpentes (unspecified)	R-USNA
MAMMALS		
Insectivores Unspecified Mole Unspecified Shrew	Order Insectivora (unspecified) (unspecified)	M-UMOL M-USHR
Bats Unspecified Bat	Order Chiroptera (unspecified)	M-UBAT
Rodents Unspecified Chipmunk Unspecified Jumping Mouse	Order Rodentia (unspecified) (unspecified)	M-UCHP M-UJUM

(unspecified)

(unspecified)

M-UMOU

M-UVOL

Carnivores	Order Carnivora	
Black Bear	Ursus americanus	M-URAM
Cougar*	Felis concolor	M-FECO
Domestic Cat	Felis sylvestris	M-FESY
Domestic Dog	Canis familiarius	M-CAFA
Fisher*	Martes pennanti	M-MAPE
Gray Wolf*	Canis lupus	M-CALU
Grizzly Bear*	Ursus arctos	M-URAR
Marten*	Martes americana	M-MAAM
Unspecified Bear	(unspecified)	M-UBEA
Unspecified Sea Lion	(unspecified)	M-USEL
Unspecified Weasel	(unspecified)	M-UWEA
Ungulates	Order Artiodactyla	
Alaska Moose	Alces alces gigas	M-ALAG
Bighorn Sheep*	Ovis canadensis	M-OVCA
Black-tailed Deer	Odocoileus hemionus columbianus	M-ODHC
California Bighorn Sheep	Ovis canadensis californiana	M-OVCC
Dall Sheep	Ovis dalli dalli	M-OVDD
Elk*	Cervus elaphus	M-CEEL
Interior Mule Deer	Odocoileus hemionus hemionus	M-ODHH
Moose*	Alces alces	M-ALAL
Mule Deer*	Odocoileus hemionus	M-ODHE
Northwestern Moose	Alces alces andersoni	M-ALAA
Rocky Mountain Bighorn Sheep	Ovis canadensis canadensis	M-OVCN
Rocky Mountain Elk	Cervus elaphus nelsoni	M-CEEN
Roosevelt Elk	Cervus elaphus roosevelti	M-CEER
Sitka Deer	Odocoileus hemionus sitkensis	M-ODHS
Stone Sheep	Ovis dalli stonei	M-OVDS
Thinhorn Sheep*	Ovis dalli	M-OVDA
White-tailed Deer*	Odocoileus virginiana	M-ODVI
Yellowstone Moose	Alces alces shirasi	M-ALAS
Domestic Cow	Bos taurus	M-BOTA
Domestic Goat	Capra hircus	M-CAHI
Domestic Horse	Equus caballus	M-EQCA
Domestic Pig	Sus scrofa	M-SUSC
Unspecified Deer	(unspecified)	M-UDEE

Whales and Porpoises Unspecified Dolphin Unspecified Whale Order Cetacea (unspecified) (unspecified) M-UDOL M-UWHA

BIRDS

	0.1.6.46	
Loons	Order Gaviiformes	D I II OO
Unspecified Loon	(unspecified)	B-ULOO
Cala	O. I. D. P. J. J. J. C.	
Grebes	Order Podicipediformes	D LICDE
Unspecified Grebe	(unspecified)	B-UGRE
Albatrosses, Shearwaters	Order Procellariiformes	
and Petrels	Order Procedurinosmes	
Unspecified Albatross	(unspecified)	B-UALB
Unspecified Shearwater	(unspecified)	B-USHE
Unspecified Storm-Petrel	(unspecified)	B-USTP
Chispeenica Storm 1 caer	(unspecifica)	D CDII
Pelicans and Cormorants	Order Pelecaniformes	
Unspecified Cormorant	(unspecified)	B-UCOR
	(F)	
Waterfowl	Order Anseriformes	
Domestic/feral duck (Peking)	Anas platyrhynchos	B-DODU
Domestic/feral goose (Greylag)	Anser answer	B-DOGS
Muskovy Duck	Cairina maschata	B-MUDU
Unspecified Dabbling Duck	(unspecified)	B-UDAD
Unspecified Diving Duck	(unspecified)	B-UDID
Unspecified Goldeneye	(unspecified)	B-UGOL
Unspecified Merganser	(unspecified)	B-UMER
Unspecified Scaup	(unspecified)	B-USCA
Unspecified Scoter	(unspecified)	B-USCO
Unspecified Swan	(unspecified)	B-USWN
Unspecified Teal	(unspecified)	B-UTEA
1	1	
Vultures, Hawks, and Falcons	Order Falconiformes	
Unspecified Eagle	(unspecified)	B-UEAG
Unspecified Falcon	(unspecified)	B-UFAL
Unspecified Hawk	(unspecified)	B-UHAW
Gallinaceous Birds	Order Galliformes	
Unspecified Grouse	(unspecified)	B-UGRU
Unspecified Ptarmigan	(unspecified)	B-UPTA
	0.1.01.1.00	
Shorebirds, Gulls, Auks,	Order Charadriiformes	
and Allies	(DILATIZ
Unspecified Auklet	(unspecified)	B-UAUK
Unspecified Gull	(unspecified)	B-UGUL
Unspecified Murre	(unspecified)	B-UMUR
Unspecified Murrelet	(unspecified)	B-UMUL
Unspecified Puffin	(unspecified)	B-UPUF
Unspecified Shorebird	(unspecified)	B-USHO
Piggons and Doyes	Order Columbiformes	
Pigeons and Doves		P LIDON
Unspecified Dove	(unspecified)	B-UDOV

Owls Order Strigiformes

Unspecified Owl (unspecified) B-UOWL

Swifts and Hummingbirds Order Caprimulgiformes

Unspecified Hummingbird (unspecified) B-UHUM Unspecified Swift (unspecified) B-USWI

Woodpeckers Order Piciformes

Unspecified Woodpecker (unspecified) B-UWOO

Passerine Birds Order Passeriformes

Unspecified Blackbird (unspecified) B-UBLA Unspecified Bluebird (unspecified) B-UBLU Unspecified Chickadee (unspecified) **B-UCHI** Unspecified Crossbill (unspecified) B-UCRO Unspecified Finch (unspecified) **B-UFIN** Unspecified Flycatcher (unspecified) **B-UFLY** Unspecified Grosbeak (unspecified) **B-UGRO** Unspecified Kinglet (unspecified) **B-UKIN** Unspecified Longspur (unspecified) **B-ULON** Unspecified Nuthatch (unspecified) **B-UNUT** Unspecified Redpoll (unspecified) B-URED Unspecified Shrike (unspecified) B-USHI Unspecified Sparrow (unspecified) B-USPA Unspecified Swallow (unspecified) B-USWA Unspecified Thrush (unspecified) **B-UTHR** Unspecified Vireo (unspecified) B-UVIR Unspecified Warbler (unspecified) B-UWAR Unspecified Waxwing (unspecified) B-UWAX Unspecified Wren (unspecified) B-UWRE

6 TREE ATTRIBUTES FOR WILDLIFE

Contents

		Page
Tree A	Attributes for Wildlife Form	3
Field	Procedure	4
	ting the Sampling Method	5
	ting the Minimum Diameter	5
	ting a Basal Area Factor Prism	5
Selec	ting the Plot Size and Shape	5
	pleting the Form	6
1.		6
2.	Date	6
3.	Surveyor	6
4.	Plot Number	6
5.	Basal Area Factor	6
6.	Plot Size	6
7.	Minimum Diameter	6
8.	Species	6
9.	Standing/Fallen	6
10.	Diameter at Breast Height	7
11.	Measured or Estimated	7
12.	Remaining Bark	7
13.	Length	7
	Slope to top of tree	7
	Slope to DBH or bottom of tree	8
	Bottom position	8
	Slope distance	8
14.	Estimated Length	8
15.	Crown Class	8
16.	Height to Live Crown	8
17.	Wildlife Codes	9
	Appearance	9
	Crown condition	9
	Bark retention	9
	Wood condition	10
	Lichen loading	10
	Wildlife use	10

		Page
Appe		
6.1	Tree species codes	13
Table	es	
	Crown condition codes	9
6.2	Bark retention codes	10
6.3	Wood retention codes	10
Figu	res	
6.1	Visual appearance codes for wildlife trees	9

	Date Y (2) m d	Comments	Wildlife use																				
	Minimum DBH (cm) (7)	E S Height	Estimati length (i) Cr. Clas (2) (2) (2) (2) (3) (4) (4) (4) (4) (4) (4) (4) (4) (4) (4	-	(14)(15)(16) (17)))))	-				-		-			-							
Plot no. 4	(a) (b)	Length	Bot Bot Slope (%) pos Distance : (m) (m) (m)	-	(f)) <u>-</u>) _	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	• •	-	- - -	-	-	-	-	-	-
(1)	Plot size (m²)	_3	Bark Top (%)	-	1 (11)(12))-)-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-		-		-	-	-	-		
Ţ,	ha) (5)	P	Stand/F	-) (1)) <u>-</u>) _	-	-	-	-	-		-	-		-		-	_	-	-	-	
Project id.	B.A.F (m²/ha)		No. Species	1 0 1	0 5 0 0 7 0) - e o	0 4	0 2	о 0 0	- 0 2 D	8 0	6 0 3	1(0]- - -	1 2	1 3 3 3 4 3 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4	T/ - -	1 5	9 -	- - -	1 8 B	1 9	2 0

Field Procedure

Getting Started

- Identify sample trees based on a prism sweep, or if using a fixed-area plot, establish plot boundaries. Be aware of the minimum DBH for the project.
- If desired, tag or flag numbers on each tree including all live and dead, standing and fallen trees.

Measure and Record

- 1. Enter the header information.
- For each sample tree, record the species and classify as standing or fallen.
- 3. Determine DBH and percentage of bark remaining at breast height.
- Record data required to calculate the length of each sample tree, or estimate length.
- For each standing live tree, assign a crown class and determine height to live crown.
- 6. For each sample tree, assess appearance, crown condition, bark retention, wood condition, lichen loading, and wildlife use.
- Check that all the required information has been collected and noted on the form. Strike through any fields that were not assessed.

Selecting the Sampling Method

Either a fixed-area or variable-radius plot may be used. Variable-radius plots will be used most commonly, but if the project area is dominated by stands with the following characteristics, a fixed-area plot may be preferable:

- · very open stands with widely spaced trees or clumps of trees
- · very dense stands where not all trees in a plot would be easily visible

Once selected, the same plot-type should be used consistently throughout the project.

Selecting the Minimum Diameter

The minimum diameter at breast height (DBH) is determined by the wildlife species of concern in the project—the goal is to sample a reasonable number of trees of an appropriate minimum size for the species. For example, for Bald Eagle interpretations, trees less than 20 cm DBH are not of value and may be ignored. For most projects, the minimum DBH will be 15 cm or greater. Trees less than the minimum DBH are ignored

Selecting a Basal Area Factor Prism

The basal area factor (BAF) prism size should be based on previous experience. A prism size that will provide 7-11 sample trees (greater than or equal to the minimum DBH) per plot is ideal. A minimum of 5 and maximum of 16 trees is required. Generally, the larger the trees, the larger the BAF; the denser the stand, the smaller the BAF required. It may be necessary to have several prisms available throughout a project. When traversing the stand, but before determining the plot location, the prism size should be selected.

Selecting the Plot Size and Shape

For fixed-area plot sampling, a plot size is selected that will provide ten or more sample trees greater than or equal to the minimum DBH. The plot size is determined for a project and is only reduced or increased in exceptional circumstances. The decision of whether to increase or decease, e.g., double or halve, the plot size is done when entering the stand, before the plot is marked, so as to minimize bias.

Plot shape can be circular, square, or rectangular, but should be determined at the start of a project.

Completing the Form

Numbered items below refer to circled numbers on the Tree Attributes for Wildlife Form shown at the beginning of this section. A recommended sequence for completing the form is described under "Field Procedure."

1. Project Identification

Identify the project (Proj id.) as in Item 3, Site Description Form.

2. Date

Enter the 2-digit codes for year, month, and day.

3. Surveyor

Enter the first initial and last name of person(s) collecting tree attribute data.

4. Plot no.

Record the plot number from the Site Description Form.

5. Basal Area Factor

Enter the standard metric (m^2/ha) Basal Area Factor (BAF) prism used, if applicable.

6. Plot size

Enter the area of the plot, if applicable.

7. Minimum Diameter

Enter the minimum diameter (DBH) being used.

8. Species

Identify tree species using the codes given in Appendix 6.1.

9. Standing / Fallen

Classify the tree as standing or fallen using the following codes and criteria:

- S Standing Trees or portions of trees with the root attached and self-supporting (i.e., the tree would remain standing if all supporting materials were removed).
- **F** Fallen Trees or portions of trees with the root attached and not self-supporting, greater than 1.3 m in length.

10. Diameter at Breast Height

Measure the diameter at breast height (DBH), i.e., 1.3 m, of all live, dead, standing, and fallen sample trees.

- On slopes, breast height is measured from the high side of the tree.
- Measure diameter to the nearest 0.1 cm.
- Hold the diameter tape tight, making no allowance for missing bark.
- If it is not possible to measure DBH accurately because of an obstruction or unsafe conditions, enter an estimate.

11. Measured or Estimated

If it was necessary to estimate DBH, enter E; otherwise, enter M.

12. Remaining Bark

Record, to the nearest percent, the percentage of bark remaining at breast height. Use the diameter tape to measure the total circumference and the portion of the circumference with bark remaining. The ratio of the two numbers multiplied by 100 equals the percent remaining bark. For example, if a tree with a 60 cm circumference has bark remaining on 15 cm, the percent remaining is $15 \div 60 \times 100 = 25\%$. Note the following coding convention:

- Record 100% bark remaining as "--". When the data is entered into a database, e.g., VENUS, substitute 100 for "--".
- If no bark is present, record as "00".

13. Length

Determine the total length of all trees greater than 1.3 m high by collecting all the information required to complete the fields on the form. Measure length from the ground surface on the high side of the stem, along the stem, to the top.

- If the tree is broken, record the length of the stem to the point of breakage.
- On fallen trees, measure from the root collar to the top of the last attached portion of the stem.
- Length may be estimated if it is not possible to measure accurately because of obstructions, unsafe conditions, or if project objectives do not require measured accuracy on all trees.

Slope to top of tree (Top):

Enter the percent slope to the top of the tree; the sign must be shown (usually '+'). The maximum acceptable reading is 99%. If a reading greater than 99 is obtained, move further from the tree, or up slope.

Slope to DBH or bottom of tree (Bot):

Enter the percent reading to DBH, or the base of the tree, or to the lowest visible point; the sign must be shown ('+' or '-'). The maximum allowed reading is 99%.

Bottom position (Bot pos):

Enter, to the nearest 0.1 m, the height at which the Bot % reading was taken.

Slope distance (SD):

Enter the distance, to nearest $0.1~\mathrm{m}$, from the observers eye to the centre of the tree trunk at **Bot pos**.

The above information is used by the data entry program, VENUS, to calculate the length of each tree. The equation used is: Height = **Bot pos** + (**Top** - **Bot** $)/100 \times ($ SD $\times \cos(\arctan(abs($ **Bot**/100)))).

14. Estimated Length

If estimating length, enter to the nearest metre. Project objectives may allow for some lengths to be estimated in order to speed-up the field work. Use conventions as in Item 13. Note: If measuring length, the data entry program, VENUS, will calculate the length from the information in Item 13.

15. Crown Class

Assign a crown class designation to all standing live trees as follows:

- D Dominant Trees with crown extending above the general level of the layer; somewhat taller than the codominant trees, and have well developed crowns, which may be somewhat crowded on the sides.
- C Codominant Trees with crowns forming the general level of the crown canopy; crown is generally smaller than those of the dominant trees and usually more crowded on the sides.
- I Intermediate Trees with crowns below, but extending into the general level of the crown canopy; crowns usually small and quite crowded on the sides.
- S **Suppressed** Trees with crowns entirely below the general level of the crown canopy.

16. Height to Live Crown

For each live tree, measure height to live crown (effective portion of the live crown for growth) in metres. This is normally the height on the stem at which live branches occupy about three-quarters of the stem circumference. Enter negative one (-1) for trees with no "effective" crown (e.g., only a few green branches).

17. Wildlife Codes

Each tree sampled is classified according to the following criteria and the appropriate code is entered on the field form.

Appearance (Appear):

For each tree, enter a code (1-9) for the illustration in Figure 6.1 that best represents the appearance of the tree, using the shape of the tree stem as the dominant characteristic

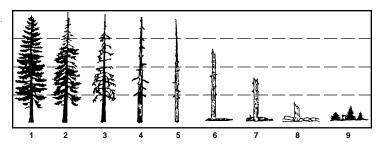


FIGURE 6.1. Visual appearance codes for wildlife trees.

Crown condition (Crown):

Using one of the classes in Table 6.1, rate the condition of the crown in relation to a normal live crown. Note: lower crown loss due to self-pruning is not counted as foliage or branch loss.

TABLE 6.1. Crown condition codes

Code	Description
1	All foliage, twigs, and branches present
2	Some or all foliage lost; possibly some twigs lost; all branches usually present; possible broken top
3	No foliage present; up to 50% of twigs lost; most branches present; possible broken top
4	No foliage or twigs present; up to 50% of branches lost; top usually broken
5	Most branches gone; some sound branch stubs remain; top broken
6	No branches present; some sound and rotting branch stubs, top broken

Bark retention (Bark):

Indicate the proportion of bark remaining on each tree, using the codes in Table 6.2.

TABLE 6.2. Bark retention codes

Code	Description
1	All bark present
2	Bark lost on damaged areas only (< 5% lost)
3	Most bark present; bare patches; some bark may be loose (5–25%
	lost)
4	Bare sections; firm and loose bark remains (26-50% lost)
5	Most bark gone; firm and loose bark remains (51-75% lost)
6	Trace of bark remains (76-99% lost)
7	No bark (100% lost)

Wood condition (Wood):

Code

Classify the texture (soundness) of the wood for each tree, using the codes in Table 6.3 $\,$

TABLE 6.3 Wood condition codes

Description

Couc	Bescription
1	No decay
2	Probable limited internal decay and/or deformities
3	Wood essentially hard; limited decay
4	Wood mostly hard, but decay spreading; soft wood present
5	Balance of hard and soft wood; spongy sections
6	More soft and spongy wood than hard wood
7	No more hard wood; all soft or spongy; powdery sections
8	Hollow shell; outer wood mostly hard or firm

Lichen loading (Lichen):

Assess all standing live or dead trees for lichen loading on branches that are within 4.5 m of the ground or root collar. Assign a rating (0–5) based on comparison with photos in *Estimating the Abundance of Arboreal Forage Lichens* (Armleder et al. 1992). A value of 0 indicates no lichens, whether it is a live tree with branches and foliage or a dead tree. If a tree has lichens but none are below the 4.5 m mark, rate as zero.

Wildlife use:

If wildlife are observed using sample trees or if there is evidence of use, record a code for the type of use (activity) in the first column and the user in the second column (e.g., a feeding bird [FB], nesting amphibian [NA], denning mammal [DM]). If only the activity can be determined, leave the second column blank. If no evidence of wildlife use is observed, indicate with dashes (--).

Activity:

- C Cavity nest May be difficult to detect, but locations are somewhat predictable, and in season, the begging calls of nestlings are easy to detect; test a tree with a cavity nest by carefully striking it to determine if the nest is occupied; if possible, note species in the *Comments* section using the specific species code (see section "User" below).
 - Many woodpeckers prefer nesting in live hardwoods, often underneath branches.
 - Nuthatches and chickadees nest in broken-off standing dead trees, or in broken branch holes, often directly below the breakage point where stem rots have entered the tree and softened the heartwood.
 - · Cavity nesters have perfectly round or oval nest holes.
 - The Pileated Woodpecker and the Common Flicker have oval nest holes.
 - Downy Woodpeckers, Chickadees, and Nuthatches have small round nest holes.
 - Brown Creepers have hammock nests under the loose bark.
 - Some ducks, owls, and squirrels nest in abandoned woodpecker holes.
- O Open nest Nests of eagles, hawks, owls, and herons are usually situated in the upper part or crown of live and dead trees; raptors and herons build large platform-style stick nests.
- D Denning/resting May be used by bears, squirrels, bats, marten, fisher, weasels, skunks, and raccoons.
 - Bears often hibernate in the hollow trunks of large standing trees, especially western redcedars.
 - Entrances to tree dens can be basal or arboreal.
- **F Feeding** Some examples of indicators are:
 - Pileated Woodpeckers excavate large rectangular feeding holes.
 - Red-breasted and Yellow-bellied Sapsuckers drill horizontal patterns of sap wells.
 - Three-toed and Black-backed Woodpeckers scale off bark to feed on insects.
 - Porcupines gnaw on large sections of bark (diagonal tooth marks are often apparent).

- Rabbits, hares, and squirrels feed on the base of young trees (squarish "windows" or girdling at the base).
- Squirrels cache cones or leave basal accumulations of cone bracts.
- M Mark tree Trees used mostly for communication of territorial boundaries and during courtship; examples of indicators include claw marks by grizzly or black bears, and antler rubbing by deer or elk.

P Perching/roosting Some examples of indicators are:

- Perch trees of aerial foraging and hawking birds are typically tall, with prominent dead branches which provide a good view of the surrounding area; especially common near riparian edges.
- Plucking spots where raptors feed are identified by "whitewash" and remains of prey in the vicinity.
- Roost trees are often in sheltered locations with natural or excavated cavities; roosting sites include cavities, hollows, beneath bark, and in foliage.

S Squirrel cache

User:

If possible, enter a code identifying the user, as follows:

 $\mathbf{M} = \text{mammal}$

 $\mathbf{B} = \text{bird}$

 \mathbf{R} = reptile

A = amphibian

If a wildlife species using a sample tree can be positively identified, record the species code on the Wildlife Habitat Assessment form or record it in the NOTES section of the Site Description Form. Use the six-character codes found in Appendix 5.1. The first letter identifies the species as mammal (M), bird (B), reptile (R) or amphibian (A); the remaining 4 letters are from the first two letters each of the genus and species names, or of the common names (mostly in the case of birds).

APPENDIX 6.1 Tree Species Codes¹

Conifers

Common name	Species	Code
Cedar	Thuja	
western redcedar	T. plicata	Cw
Cypress	Chamaecyparis	
yellow-cedar	C. nootkatensis	Yc
Douglas-fir	Pseudotsuga	
Douglas-fir	P. menziesii	Fd
interior Douglas-fir	P. menziesii var. glauca	Fdi
coast Douglas-fir	P. menziesii var. menziesii	Fdc
Fir (Balsam)	Abies	
amabilis fir	A. amabilis	Ba
grand fir	A. grandis	Bg
subalpine fir	A. lasiocarpa	Bl
Hemlock	Tsuga	
mountain hemlock	T. mertensiana	Hm
western hemlock	T. heterophylla	Hw
mountain x		
western hemlock hybrid	T. mertensiana x heterophylla	Hxm
Juniper	Juniperus	
Rocky Mountain juniper	J. scopulorum	Jr
Larch	Larix	
alpine larch	L. lyallii	La
tamarack	L. laricina	Lt
western larch	L. occidentalis	Lw
Pine	Pinus	
whitebark pine	P. albicaulis	Pa
limber pine	P. flexilis	Pf
jack pine	P. banksiana	Pj
lodgepole pine	P. contorta	Pl
lodgepole x jack pine hybrid	P. x murraybanksiana	Pxj
shore pine	P. contorta var. contorta	Plc
lodgepole pine	P. contorta var. latifolia	Pli
western white pine	P. monticola	Pw
ponderosa pine	P. ponderosa	Py
Spruce	Picea	
black spruce	P. mariana	Sb
Engelmann spruce	P. engelmannii	Se
white spruce	P. glauca	Sw
Sitka spruce	P. sitchensis	Ss
spruce hybrid	Picea cross	Sx

Conifers

Common name	Species	Code
Engelmann x white	P. engelmanniix glauca	Sxw
Sitka x white	P. x lutzii	Sxl
Sitka x unknown	P. sitchensisx?	Sxs
Yew	Taxus	
western yew	T. brevifolia	Tw

Hardwoods

Common name	Species	Code
Alder	Alnus	
red alder	A. rubra	Dr
Apple	Malus	
Pacific crab apple	Malus fusca	Up
Aspen, Cottonwood, Poplar	r <i>Populus</i>	
poplar	P. balsamifera	Ac
balsam poplar	P. b. ssp. balsamifera	Acb
cottonwood	P. b. ssp. trichocarpa	Act
hybrid poplar	P.spp.	Ax
trembling aspen	P. tremuloides	At
Arbutus	Arbutus	
arbutus	A. menziesii	Ra
Birch	Betula	
Alaska paper birch	B. neoalaskana	Ea
Alaska x paper birch hyb	oid B. x winteri	Exp
paper birch	B. papyrifera	Ep
water birch	B. occidentalis	Ew
Cascara	Rhamnus	
cascara	R. purshiana	Kc
Cherry	Prunus	
bitter cherry	P. emarginata	Vb
pin cherry	P. pensylvanica	Vp
choke cherry	P. virginiana	Vv
Dogwood	Cornus	
western flowering dogwood	od <i>C. nuttallii</i>	Gp
Maple	Acer	•
bigleaf maple	A. macrophyllum	Mb
vine maple	A. circinatum	Mv
Oak	Quercus	
Garry oak	Q. garryana	Qg

Hardwoods

Common name	Species	Code	
Willow	Salix		
peach-leaf willow	S. amygdaloides	Wa	
Bebb's willow	S. bebbiana	Wb	
pussy willow	S. discolor	Wd	
Pacific willow	S. lucida	Wp	
Scouler's willow	S. scouleriana	Ws	
Sitka willow	S. sitchensis	Wt	

Others

0111015		
Common name	Species	Code
Unknown		
Unknown conifer		Xc
Unknown hardwood		Xh
Other tree, not on list		
Other conifer		Zc
Other hardwood		Zh

¹ Additional codes for exotic tree species available from B.C. Ministry of Forests, Research Branch. Also noted in Appendix 4.1

7 COARSE WOODY DEBRIS

Cont	ents	Page
Coars	e Woody Debris Form	2
	Procedure	3
Defin	ition of Coarse Woody Debris	4
	ling Methods	4
	for Sampling	5
	oleting the form	8
1.		8
2.	Date	8
3.	Surveyor	8
4.	Azimuth	8
5.	Line Length	8
6.	Species	8
7.	Diameter	8
8.	Class	8
9.	Tilt Angle	10
10.	Length	10
	Measurement of stems from attached roots	11
	Measurement of forked stems	12
	Measurement of pieces that are crossed more than	
	once on the transect	13
11.	Height of End	14
12.	Angle from Ground	14
13.	Degree and Type of Piling	14
Appe	ndiv	
	Tree species codes	15
7.1	nec species codes	10
Table	S	
7.1	Decay classes for coarse woody debris	9
7.2	· · ·	14
	1	
Figur	es	
	Rules for sampling coarse woody debris	6
7.2		7
7.3	Recording the tilt angle of coarse woody debris	10
7.4	Rules for measuring length of coarse woody debris	14

Transact #1 Transact #1 Transact #1 Transact #2 Degree and Type of Pling Azimuth 4 (1-359) Sampled 5 24 m Azimuth 1 (1-359) Sampled 5 24 m Azimuth 1 (1-359) Sampled 24 m (in plot boundaries) Azimuth 1 (1-359) Sampled 24 m (in plot boundaries) Azimuth 1 (1-359) Sampled 24 m (in plot boundaries) Azimuth 1 (1-359) Sampled 24 m (in plot boundaries) Azimuth 1 (1-359) Sampled 24 m (in plot boundaries) Azimuth 1 (1-359) Sampled 24 m (in plot boundaries) Azimuth 1 (1-359) Sampled 24 m (in plot boundaries) Azimuth 1 (1-359) Sampled 24 m (in plot boundaries) Azimuth 1 (1-359) Sampled (24) Sampled 24 m (24) Sampled (25)
Transect #1 Transect #2 Transect #2 Transect #2 Transect #2 Transect #2 Degree and Typ Diameter g Title Length Height of Argin (m) grad. G (m)
Plot no. (1) Transect #2 Degree and Type (0-359) Sampled (5) 24m Azimuth 1 (0-359) Sampled (2) 24m (in plot bound grad, (im) and cm) and
Plot no. (1) Transect #2 Degree and Typ Sampled 5) 24 m Azimuth (0-359) Sampled 24 m (in plot bound and condition) Gameter ## Tit Length Height of Angle ## Size of pile (m) Gameter ## Tit Length Height of Angle ## Size of pile (m) Gameter ## Tit Length Height of Angle ## Size of pile (m) Gameter ## Tit Length Height of Angle ## Size of pile (m) Gameter ## Tit Length Height of Angle ## Size of pile (m) Gameter ## Tit Length Height of Angle ## Size of pile (m) Gameter ## Tit Length Height of Angle ## Size of pile (m) Gameter ## Tit Length Height of Angle ## Size of pile (m) Gameter ## Tit Length Height of Angle ## Size of pile (m) Gameter ## Tit Length Height of Angle ## Size of pile (m) Gameter ## Tit Length Height of Angle ## Size of pile (m) Gameter ## Tit Length Height of Angle ## Size of pile (m) Gameter ## Tit Length Height of Angle ## Size of pile (m) Gameter ## Tit Length Height of Angle ## Size of pile (m) Gameter ## Tit Length Height of Angle ## Size of pile (m) Gameter ## Tit Length Height of Angle ## Size of pile (m) Gameter ## Si
Piot no. (1)
Plot no. (1)
Transect #2 Degree and Typ Surveyor (in plot boun Azimuth
(1)
Transect #2 Surveyor (in plot boun Co-359) Sampled 24 m (in plot boun Co-359) Sampled 24 m (in plot boun Co-359) Sampled 24 m Size of pile (m) Comments C
Surveyor (3)
Surveyor (3)
Surveyor (3)
Surveyor (3) Of (in plot boun 204 m Angle # Size of pile (m) 3 m
Degree and Typ (in plot bound in plot bound
and Typ lot boun oile (m) theight theight lot height lo
and Type of F ot boundaries wife (m) Diam wheight (cm) 1 13
daries Diam (cm)

Field Procedure

Getting Started

- 1. The materials required for sampling coarse woody debris (CWD) are:
 - · a compass, graduated in degrees;
 - a clinometer, in percent and degrees (the latter read through the side window);
 - · slope correction tables or trigonometry formulas;
 - two measuring tapes (minimum of 30 m each);
 - · a diameter tape and/or calipers;
 - · notebook with forms, pencil.
- 2. Establish the first sampling line by following a random azimuth for that plot.
 - Measure out a 24-m line from the plot centre, correcting the slope distance to horizontal by using slope tables or trigonometry.
 - · Anchor the tape at both ends of the line.
- 3. Establish the second sampling line at plus 90° from the first line by following the same procedures in (2) above.
- 4. Record the azimuth of each line.

Measure and Record

- Note the length of each line sampled out of the total. The full length of one or both lines may not be sampled because of unsafe conditions or heavy accumulations of CWD. Otherwise they will be 24 out of 24 m.
- Walk out along the first sampling line and select the pieces of CWD to be measured according to the sampling rules. Take care not to trample and crush the CWD as you walk along the line.

As each piece that fits the definition of CWD is encountered, note the following:

- · tree species to the level that is reliable,
- diameter.
- decay class, based on the entire piece, by using the table of decay class indicators,
- tilt angle of each piece, and
- · length of each piece, measured or estimated.
- Where CWD pieces are suspended above the sampling line it may be necessary to estimate certain attributes (diameter and/or length).
- 4. If odd-shaped pieces are encountered, record their equivalent diameter.
- 5. Repeat steps 2, 3, and 4 for the second transect line.
- 6. Check the form to ensure all the required information has been collected. Strike through any fields that were not assessed.

Definition of Coarse Woody Debris

Coarse woody debris (CWD) is dead woody material, in various stages of decomposition, located above the soil, larger than 7.5 cm in diameter (or equivalent cross-section) at the crossing point, which is not self-supporting. Trees and stumps (intact in ground) are considered self-supporting.

Pieces of coarse woody debris may be suspended on nearby live or dead trees, other pieces of coarse woody debris, stumps or other terrain features.

Coarse woody debris includes:

- downed horizontal or suspended (not self-supporting) dead tree boles with or without roots attached:
- fallen trees which still have green foliage if they no longer have roots attached (no living cambium) to the ground to keep them alive;
- woody pieces greater than 7.5 cm at the point where the sampling line crosses the piece;
- uprooted (not self-supporting) stumps greater than 7.5 cm in diameter at the crossing point and any of their exposed dead roots greater than 7.5 cm in diameter at the crossing point;
- fallen broken tree tops which may be horizontal or leaning, or large fallen branches; and,
- recently cut logs.

Coarse woody debris does not include:

- · dead branches still connected to standing trees;
- self-supporting (not overturned) stumps;
- exposed roots of self-supporting trees or stumps;
- material that is buried beneath organic or mineral soil layers or has decomposed enough to be part of the forest floor; and,
- · live or dead trees (still rooted) which are self supporting.

Sampling Methods

Sample coarse woody debris along two 24 m (horizontal distance) lines. These should run from the plot centre, the first following a random azimuth and the second at plus 90° to the azimuth. Take the slope of each line and determine the slope distance required to produce a horizontal line of 24 m length. If for any reason all of the line cannot be sampled, note the distance

which was actually sampled out of the total distance (record in comments section why the portion was not measured).

If the line falls on *heavy* accumulations such as windthrow, felled and bucked timber, or logging debris and the random azimuth is odd, sample only the first and third quarters of the line (from 0 to 6 m and from 12 to 18 m). If the random azimuth is even, sample the second and fourth quarters of the line (from 6 to 12 m and from 18 to 24 m).

If the line falls on *very heavy* accumulations of windthrown, felled and bucked timber, or a debris pile, sample only the second quarter of the line (from 6 to 12 m) for even random azimuths and the third quarter (12 to 18 m) for odd random azimuths. An estimate should be made of the number of pieces and their diameters in heavy accumulations which can not be safely or accurately measured.

Coarse woody debris in the form of felled and bucked logs, or cold decks, is sampled even though this material will likely be removed.

When non-linear pieces are encountered, an equivalent diameter is recorded. This applies to chunks with odd configurations.

Rules for Sampling

If the transect crosses coarse woody debris, measure the amount above the soil at the crossing point. Some of the CWD may be suspended above the transect line. In such cases it might be necessary to estimate diameter and length measurements.

 Coarse woody debris must be greater than 7.5 cm in diameter (or equivalent) at the line intersect point (see 7.1a).

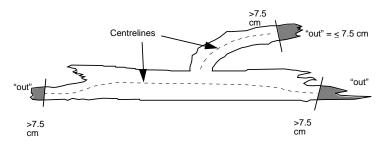
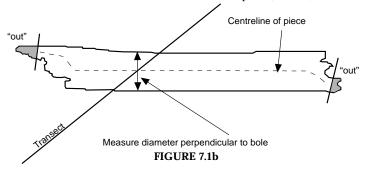


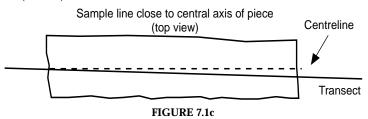
FIGURE 7.1a

•5•

• The transect must cross the central axis of the piece (see 7.1b).



 If the transect coincides closely with the centreline, make the best decision as to whether the line crosses the centreline, and where (see 7.1c).



 If the transect intersects a curved or angular piece more than once, measure each intersection as a separate observation (see 7.1d).

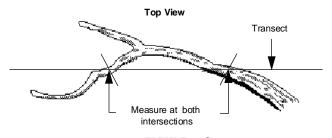


FIGURE 7.1d

FIGURE 7.1. Rules for sampling coarse woody debris.

- If a log has split open, but is still partially held together, record the
 diameter as if the piece were whole. If a stem has shattered into a
 number of distinct, unconnected pieces, record each piece that is greater
 than 7.5 cm in diameter at the point of sampling.
- Do not tally undisturbed stumps. Tally uprooted stumps and their exposed dead roots if they meet the other criteria.
- Tally only the CWD that lies above the soil (see 7.2). A piece is no
 longer above the soil when it is entirely buried beneath a layer of
 surface organic matter (forest floor) and/or mineral soil. Estimate an
 "equivalent" diameter for the remaining portion of logs where part of
 the wood has decayed and become part of the soil layer.

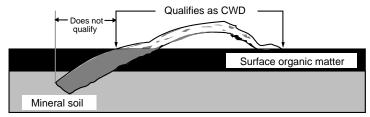


FIGURE 7.2. Tally only coarse woody debris that lies above the soil.

Completing the Form

Numbered items below refer to circled numbers on the Coarse Woody Debris (CWD) Form shown at the beginning of this section. A recommended sequence for completing the form is described in "Field Procedure."

1. Plot Number

Record the plot number and the project identification (Proj. id.) from the top of the Site Description Form.

2. Date

Enter the year (YY), month (MM), and day (DD).

3. Surveyor

Enter the first initial and last name of the person(s) collecting CWD data (Survyr).

4. Azimuth

Record the first azimuth (randomly selected) for Transect No. 1, and the second at plus 90° to Transect No. 2.

5. Line Length

Record the distance that was actually sampled (Sampled $__$ of 24 m) out of the total distance, in the spaces provided.

6. Species

Record code for each piece, using tree species codes found in Appendix 7.1. If the species can not be determined put "X" for unknown, "Xh" for unknown hardwood, or "Xc" for unknown conifer.

7. Diameter

Record the diameter of the piece perpendicular to the bole at the point where the sampling line is considered to intersect the central axis of the piece. Wrap a diameter tape around the bole, when possible, or use the reverse side of the tape to estimate the diameter. Calipers may also be used, and are often easier when coarse woody debris is in several layers. Measure diameter to the closest 0.1 cm. If the CWD is hollow, estimate the diameter equivalent required to approximate the volume of the remaining wood.

8. Class

Assign a decay class (1 to 5) based on the majority condition of the entire piece. The five classes used to describe the condition of coarse woody debris are based primarily upon wood texture, and secondarily on other characteristics. See Table 7.1 for descriptions of classes.

TABLE 7.1. Decay classes for coarse woody debris

	Log decomposition class 1	Log decomposition class 2	Log decomposition class 3	Log decomposition class 4	Log decomposition class 5
	が大き			O. L.	
	Class 1	Class 2	Class 3	Class 4	Class 5
Wood Texture	Intact, hard	Intact, hard to partly decaying	Hard, large pieces, partly decaying	Small, blocky pieces	Many small pieces, soft portions
Portion on Ground	Elevated on support points	Elevated but sagging slightly	Sagging near ground, or broken	All of log on ground, sinking	All of log on ground, partly sunken
Twigs < 3 cm (if originally present)	Present	Absent	Absent	Absent	Absent
Bark	Intact	Intact or partly missing	Trace	Absent	Absent
Shape	Round	Round	Round	Round to oval	Oval
Invading Roots	None	None	In sapwood	In heartwood	In heartwood

9. Tilt Angle

Refers to the tilt of the individual log away from the horizontal, regardless of the slope of the ground. A clinometer is placed on the surface of the piece at the point of the intercept measurement and the angle from the horizontal (in degrees) is recorded (see FIGURE 7.3).

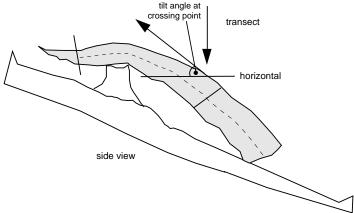
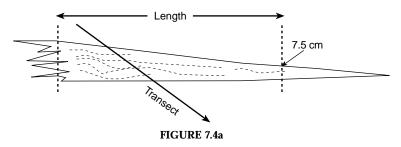


FIGURE 7.3. Recording the tilt angle of coarse woody debris.

10. Length

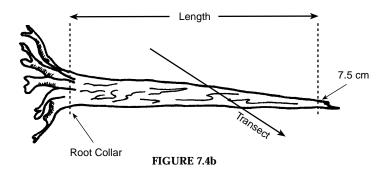
Record the length of each piece to the nearest $0.1\ m$ (see 7.4a).

- If a log has broken lengthwise but is still partially held together, record the equivalent length as if the piece were whole.
- If the end(s) of the piece are broken, visually fold in the broken sections to compensate for the missing parts.
- Piece length is from the largest end down to the 7.5 cm diameter limit.



Measurement of stems from attached roots:

• For main boles with exposed roots, piece length is measured only down to the root collar (see 7.4b).



 If a root mass is transected, piece length for individual roots (larger than the minimum diameter) is measured only up to the root collar (see 7.4c).

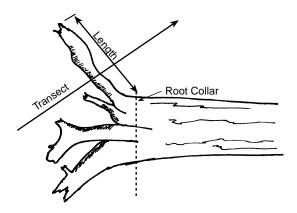
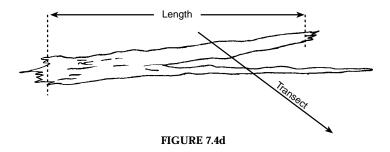


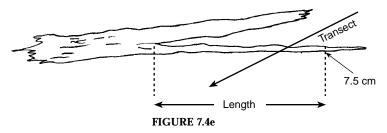
FIGURE 7.4c

Measurement of forked stems

• Where one of the forks transected is determined (by largest diameter) to be a continuation of the main bole then the length will be measured to the ends of the main piece (see 7.4d).



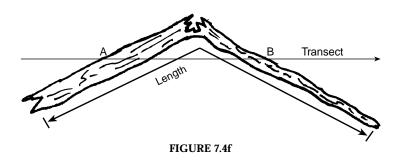
• The piece length of the smaller stem(s) (smaller diameter) will be measured only to the junction with the main bole (see 7.4e).



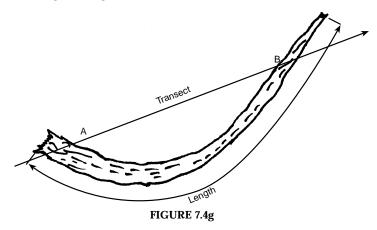
 For forks of near equal stature make a determination as above and measure accordingly.

Measurement of pieces that are crossed more than once on the transect:

• Pieces broken but still physically attached are measured as one piece at each transect point. The length measurement is taken along the central axis of the piece (see 7.4f).



 The full piece length of curved/crooked pieces is measured at both crossings (see 7.4g).



 $FIGURE\ 7.4.\ Rules\ for\ measuring\ length\ of\ coarse\ woody\ debris.$

In the same manner as above, record the full piece length twice where the same piece is crossed by two transects at right angles to each other.

11. Height of Lowest End

This is the height above ground of the central axis of the lowest end of each piece of CWD, measured to the nearest cm. The lowest end is defined as the end of the piece that is in closest contact with the ground, not necessarily the end that is at the lowest altitude.

12. Angle of Ground

At the transect crossing measure and record the angle of the ground, following the same procedure for determining CWD piece tilt. It may be neccessary to measure the ground angle over a 1 to 2 m (or more) distance if the surface is irregular.

Record this angle to the nearest degree and indicate whether it is positive or negative (e.g. \cdot 07, \cdot 12). When measuring the angle of the ground, face in the direction that gives a positive tilt angle for the piece of CWD. The angle of ground measured by sighting in that direction may be positive or negative.

13. Degree and Type of Piling

Piles of CWD are important for many wildlife species. Use of the pile is dependent upon interstitial spaces as well as the diameter of pieces and the size of the pile.

Size of pile:

Record the estimated length, width, and height to nearest 0.1 m.

Diameter:

Record, to nearest cm, the average diameter of pieces of CWD composing the pile.

Interstitial Spaces:

Using the codes in Table 7.2, estimate of the size of interstitial spaces. This not intended to indicate which species will use the pile.

TABLE 7.5. Codes for size of interstitial spaces.

Code	Class	Description
S	small	Most interstitial spaces are the size of, or smaller than, a squirrel
m	medium	Most interstitial spaces are the size of a lynx
1	large	Most interstitial spaces are the size of, or larger than, the average black bear

APPENDIX 7.1 Tree Species Codes¹

Conifers

Common name	Species	Code
Cedar	Thuja	
western redcedar	T. plicata	Cw
Cypress	Chamaecyparis	ew.
yellow-cedar	C. nootkatensis	Yc
Douglas-fir	Pseudotsuga	
Douglas-fir	P. menziesii	Fd
interior Douglas-fir	P. menziesii var. glauca	Fdi
coast Douglas-fir	P. menziesii var. menziesii	Fdc
Fir (Balsam)	Abies	
amabilis fir	A. amabilis	Ba
grand fir	A. grandis	Bg
subalpine fir	A. lasiocarpa	Bl
Hemlock	Tsuga	
mountain hemlock	T. mertensiana	Hm
western hemlock	T. heterophylla	Hw
mountain x	1 0	
western hemlock hybrid	T. mertensiana x heterophylla	Hxm
Juniper	Juniperus	
Rocky Mountain juniper	J. scopulorum	Jr
Larch	Larix	
alpine larch	L. lyallii	La
tamarack	L. laricina	Lt
western larch	L. occidentalis	Lw
Pine	Pinus	
whitebark pine	P. albicaulis	Pa
limber pine	P. flexilis	Pf
jack pine	P. banksiana	Pj
lodgepole pine	P. contorta	Ρľ
lodgepole x jack pine hybrid	P. x murraybanksiana	Pxj
shore pine	P. contorta var. contorta	Plc
lodgepole pine	P. contorta var. latifolia	Pli
western white pine	P. monticola	Pw
ponderosa pine	P. ponderosa	Py
Spruce	Picea	
black spruce	P. mariana	Sb
Engelmann spruce	P. engelmannii	Se
white spruce	P. glauca	Sw
Sitka spruce	P. sitchensis	Ss
spruce hybrid	Picea cross	Sx
Engelmann x white	P. engelmannii x glauca	Sxw

Conifers (continued)

Common name	Species	Code
Sitka x white	P. x lutzii	Sxl
Sitka x unknown	P. sitchensis x ?	Sxs
Yew	Taxus	
western yew	T. brevifolia	Tw

Hardwoods

red alder A. rubra Dr Apple Malus Pacific crab apple Malus fusca Up Aspen, Cottonwood, Poplar populus poplar P. balsamifera Ac balsam poplar P. b. ssp. balsamifera Acb cottonwood P. b. ssp. trichocarpa Act hybrid poplar P. spp. Ax trembling aspen P. tremuloides At Arbutus Arbutus arbutus Arbutus Alaska paper birch Betula Alaska paper birch B. neoalaskana Ea Alaska x paper birch hybid B. x winteri Exp paper birch B. papyrifera Ep water birch B. occidentalis Ew Cascara Rhamnus cascara R. purshiana Kc Cherry Prunus bitter cherry P. emarginata Vb pin cherry P. emarginata Vp choke cherry P. virginiana Vv Dogwood Cornus western flowering dogwood C. nuttallii Gp Maple Acer bigleaf maple A. macrophyllum Mb vine maple A. circinatum Mv Oak Quercus	Common name	Species	Code
Apple Malus Pacific crab apple Malus fusca Up Aspen, Cottonwood, Poplar poplar Populus poplar P. balsamifera Ac balsam poplar P. b. ssp. balsamifera Acb cottonwood P. b. ssp. trichocarpa Act hybrid poplar P. spp. Ax trembling aspen P. tremuloides At Arbutus Arbutus arbutus A. menziesii Ra Birch Betula Alaska paper birch B. neoalaskana Ea Alaska x paper birch B. neoalaskana Ea Alaska x paper birch B. papyrifera Ep water birch B. occidentalis Ew Cascara Rhamnus cascara R. purshiana Kc Cherry Prunus bitter cherry P. emarginata Vb pin cherry P. pensylvanica Vp choke cherry P. virginiana Vv Dogwood Cornus western flowering dogwood C. nuttallii Gp Maple Acer bigleaf maple A. macrophyllum Mb vine maple A. circinatum Mv Dak Quercus	Alder	Alnus	
Pacific crab apple Malus fusca Up Aspen, Cottonwood, Poplar Populus poplar P. balsamifera Ac balsam poplar P. b. ssp. balsamifera Acb cottonwood P. b. ssp. trichocarpa Act hybrid poplar P. spp. Ax trembling aspen P. tremuloides At Arbutus Arbutus arbutus A. menziesii Ra Birch Betula Alaska paper birch B. neoalaskana Ea Alaska x paper birch hybid B. x winteri Exp paper birch B. papyrifera Ep water birch B. occidentalis Ew Cascara Rhamnus cascara R. purshiana Kc Cherry Prunus bitter cherry P. emarginata Vb pin cherry P. pensylvanica Vp choke cherry P. virginiana Vv Oogwood Cornus western flowering dogwood C. nuttallii Gp Maple Acer bigleaf maple A. macrophyllum Mb vine maple A. circinatum Mv Oak	red alder	A. rubra	Dr
Pacific crab apple Aspen, Cottonwood, Poplar Populus poplar P. balsamifera Ac balsam poplar P. b. ssp. balsamifera Acb cottonwood P. b. ssp. trichocarpa Act hybrid poplar P. spp. Ax trembling aspen P. tremuloides At Arbutus Arbutus arbutus Arbutus Arbutus A. menziesii Ra Birch Betula Alaska paper birch B. neoalaskana Ea Alaska x paper birch hybid B. x winteri Exp paper birch B. papyrifera Ep water birch B. occidentalis Ew Cascara Rhamnus cascara R. purshiana Kc Cherry Prunus bitter cherry P. emarginata Vb pin cherry P. emarginata Vp choke cherry P. virginiana Vv Dogwood Cornus western flowering dogwood C. nuttallii Gp Maple Acer bigleaf maple A. macrophyllum Mb vine maple A. circinatum Mv Dak Quercus	Apple	Malus	
Aspen, Cottonwood, Poplar Populus poplar P. balsamifera Ac balsam poplar P. b. ssp. balsamifera Acb cottonwood P. b. ssp. trichocarpa Act hybrid poplar P. spp. Ax trembling aspen P. tremuloides At Arbutus Arbutus arbutus A. menziesii Ra Birch Betula Alaska paper birch B. neoalaskana Ea Alaska x paper birch hybid B. x winteri Exp paper birch B. papyrifera Ep water birch B. occidentalis Ew Cascara Rhamnus cascara R. purshiana Kc Cherry Prunus bitter cherry P. emarginata Vb pin cherry P. pensylvanica Vp choke cherry P. virginiana Vv Dogwood Cornus western flowering dogwood C. nuttallii Gp Maple Acer bigleaf maple A. macrophyllum Mb vine maple A. circinatum Mv Dak Quercus		Malus fusca	Up
balsam poplar	Aspen, Cottonwood, Poplar	Populus	•
cottonwood P. b. ssp. trichocarpa Act hybrid poplar P. spp. Ax trembling aspen P. tremuloides At Arbutus Arbutus Arbutus Arbutus Arbutus Anderseii Ra Birch Betula Alaska paper birch B. neoalaskana Ea Alaska x paper birch B. papyrifera Ep water birch B. papyrifera Ep water birch B. occidentalis Ew Cascara Rhamnus cascara R. purshiana Kc Cherry Prunus bitter cherry P. emarginata Vb pin cherry P. pensylvanica Vp choke cherry P. virginiana Vv Cogwood Cornus western flowering dogwood C. nuttallii Gp Maple Acer bigleaf maple A. macrophyllum Mb vine maple A. circinatum Mv Oak Quercus	poplar	P. balsamifera	Ac
cottonwood P. b. ssp. trichocarpa Ax trembling aspen P. tremuloides At Arbutus Arbutus Arbutus A. menziesii Ra Birch Betula Alaska paper birch B. neoalaskana Ea Alaska x paper birch B. papyrifera Ep water birch B. occidentalis Ew Cascara Rhamnus cascara R. purshiana Kc Cherry Prunus bitter cherry P. emarginata Vb pin cherry P. pensylvanica Vp choke cherry P. virginiana Vv Oogwood Cornus western flowering dogwood C. nuttallii Gp Maple Acer bigleaf maple A. macrophyllum Mb vine maple A. circinatum Mv Ook	balsam poplar	P. b. ssp. balsamifera	Acb
trembling aspen P. tremuloides At Arbutus arbutus A. menziesii Ra Birch Betula Alaska paper birch B. neoalaskana Ea Alaska x paper birch hybid B. x winteri Exp paper birch B. papyrifera Ep water birch B. occidentalis Ew Cascara Rhamnus cascara R. purshiana Kc Cherry Prunus bitter cherry Prunus bitter cherry P. emarginata Vb pin cherry P. pensylvanica Vp choke cherry P. virginiana Vv Cogwood Cornus western flowering dogwood C. nuttallii Gp Maple Acer bigleaf maple A. macrophyllum Mb vine maple A. circinatum Mv Oak Quercus		P. b. ssp. trichocarpa	Act
trembling aspen P. tremuloides At Arbutus arbutus A. menziesii Ra Birch Betula Alaska paper birch B. neoalaskana Ea Alaska x paper birch hybid B. x winteri Exp paper birch B. papyrifera Ep water birch B. occidentalis Ew Cascara Rhamnus cascara R. purshiana Kc Cherry Prunus bitter cherry Prunus bitter cherry P. emarginata Vb pin cherry P. pensylvanica Vp choke cherry P. virginiana Vv Cogwood Cornus western flowering dogwood C. nuttallii Gp Maple Acer bigleaf maple A. macrophyllum Mb vine maple A. circinatum Mv Oak Quercus	hybrid poplar		Ax
arbutus A. menziesii Ra Birch Betula Alaska paper birch B. neoalaskana Ea Alaska x paper birch hybid B. x winteri Exp paper birch B. papyrifera Ep water birch B. occidentalis Ew Cascara Rhamnus cascara R. purshiana Kc Cherry Prunus bitter cherry Prunus bitter cherry P. emarginata Vb pin cherry P. virginiana Vv Cogwood Cornus western flowering dogwood C. nuttallii Gp Maple Acer bigleaf maple A. macrophyllum Mb vine maple A. circinatum Mv Oak Quercus		P. tremuloides	At
Sirch Betula Alaska paper birch B. neoalaskana Ea Alaska x paper birch hybid B. x winteri Exp paper birch B. papyrifera Ep water birch B. occidentalis Ew Cascara Rhamnus cascara R. purshiana Kc Cherry Prunus bitter cherry Prunus bitter cherry P. emarginata Vb pin cherry P. virginiana Vv Cogwood Cornus western flowering dogwood C. nuttallii Gp Waple Acer bigleaf maple A. macrophyllum Mb vine maple A. circinatum Mv Oak Quercus	Arbutus	Arbutus	
Alaska paper birch B. neoalaskana Ea Alaska x paper birch hybid B. x winteri Exp paper birch B. papyrifera Ep water birch B. occidentalis Ew Cascara Rhamnus cascara R. purshiana Kc Cherry Prunus bitter cherry P. emarginata Vb pin cherry P. pensylvanica Vp choke cherry P. virginiana Vv Dogwood Cornus western flowering dogwood C. nuttallii Gp Maple Acer bigleaf maple A. macrophyllum Mb vine maple A. circinatum Mv Dak Quercus	arbutus	A. menziesii	Ra
Alaska x paper birch hybid B. x winteri Exp paper birch B. papyrifera Ep water birch B. occidentalis Ew Cascara Rhamnus cascara R. purshiana Kc Cherry Prunus bitter cherry Premarginata Vb pin cherry P. emarginata Vp choke cherry P. virginiana Vv Oogwood Cornus western flowering dogwood C. nuttallii Gp Maple Acer bigleaf maple A. macrophyllum Mb vine maple A. circinatum Mv Oak Quercus	Birch	Betula	
paper birch water birch B. papyrifera Ep water birch B. occidentalis Ew Cascara Rhamnus cascara R. purshiana Kc Cherry Prunus bitter cherry P. emarginata pin cherry P. pensylvanica Vp choke cherry P. virginiana Vv Cogwood Cornus western flowering dogwood C. nuttallii Gp Maple Acer bigleaf maple A. macrophyllum Vo Dak Quercus Ep	Alaska paper birch	B. neoalaskana	Ea
water birch B. occidentalis Ew Cascara Rhamnus cascara R. purshiana Kc Cherry Prunus bitter cherry P. emarginata Vp pin cherry P. pensylvanica Vp choke cherry P. virginiana Vv Dogwood Cornus western flowering dogwood C. nuttallii Gp Maple Acer bigleaf maple A. macrophyllum Vine maple A. circinatum Mv Dak Quercus	Alaska x paper birch hybid	B. x winteri	Exp
Cascara Rhamnus cascara R. purshiana Kc Cherry Prunus bitter cherry P. emarginata Vb pin cherry P. pensylvanica Vp choke cherry P. virginiana Vv Dogwood Cornus western flowering dogwood C. nuttallii Gp Maple Acer bigleaf maple A. macrophyllum Mb vine maple A. circinatum Mv Dak Quercus	paper birch	B. papyrifera	Ep
cascara R. purshiana Kc Cherry Prunus bitter cherry P. emarginata Vb pin cherry P. pensylvanica Vp choke cherry P. virginiana Vv Dogwood Cornus western flowering dogwood C. nuttallii Gp Maple Acer bigleaf maple A. macrophyllum Mb vine maple A. circinatum Mv Dak Quercus	water birch	B. occidentalis	Ew
Cherry Prunus bitter cherry P. emarginata Vb pin cherry P. pensylvanica Vp choke cherry P. virginiana Vv Dogwood Cornus western flowering dogwood C. nuttallii Gp Maple Acer bigleaf maple A. macrophyllum Mb vine maple A. circinatum Mv Dak Quercus	Cascara	Rhamnus	
bitter cherry P. emarginata Vb pin cherry P. pensylvanica Vp choke cherry P. virginiana Vv Dogwood Cornus western flowering dogwood C. nuttallii Gp Maple Acer bigleaf maple A. macrophyllum Mb vine maple A. circinatum Mv Dak Quercus	cascara	R. purshiana	Kc
pin cherry P. pensylvanica Vp choke cherry P. virginiana Vv Dogwood Cornus western flowering dogwood C. nuttallii Gp Maple Acer bigleaf maple A. macrophyllum Mb vine maple A. circinatum Mv Dak Quercus	Cherry	Prunus	
choke cherry P. virginiana Vv Dogwood Cornus western flowering dogwood C. nuttallii Gp Maple Acer bigleaf maple A. macrophyllum Mb vine maple A. circinatum Mv Dak Quercus	bitter cherry	P. emarginata	Vb
Oogwood Cornus western flowering dogwood C. nuttallii Gp Maple Acer bigleaf maple A. macrophyllum Mb vine maple A. circinatum Mv Oak Quercus	pin cherry	P. pensylvanica	Vp
Oogwood Cornus western flowering dogwood C. nuttallii Gp Maple Acer bigleaf maple A. macrophyllum Mb vine maple A. circinatum Mv Oak Quercus	choke cherry	P. virginiana	$\overline{\text{Vv}}$
Maple Acer bigleaf maple A. macrophyllum Mb vine maple A. circinatum Mv Oak Quercus	Dogwood		
Maple Acer bigleaf maple A. macrophyllum Mb vine maple A. circinatum Mv Oak Quercus	western flowering dogwood	C. nuttallii	Gp
vine maple A. circinatum Mv Oak Quercus	Maple		•
Oak Quercus	bigleaf maple	A. macrophyllum	Mb
Oak Quercus	vine maple		Mv
Carry oak O garryana Og	Oak	Quercus	
Gairy dan Q. gairy and Qg	Garry oak	Q. garryana	Qg

Hardwoods (continued)

Common name	Species	Code
Willow	Salix	
peach-leaf willow	S. amygdaloides	Wa
Bebb's willow	S. bebbiana	Wb
pussy willow	S. discolor	Wd
Pacific willow	S. lucida	Wp
Scouler's willow	S. scouleriana	Ws
Sitka willow	S. sitchensis	Wt

Others

Common name	Species	Code
Unknown		
Unknown conifer		Xc
Unknown hardwood		Xh
Other tree, not on list		
Other conifer		Zc
Other hardwood		Zh

¹Additional codes for exotic tree species available from B.C. Ministry of Forests, Research Branch. Also noted in Appendix 4.1

8 REFERENCES

- Armleder, H.M., S.K. Stevenson, and S.D. Walker. 1992. Estimating the abundance of arboreal forage lichens. B.C. Min. For., Victoria, B.C. Land Management Handbook No. 7 (Insert).
- Canadian System of Soil Classification. 1998. The Canadian system of soil classification. Third edition. Soil Classification Working Group, Research Branch, Agriculture Agri-food Canada, Ottawa.
- Cannings, R.A. and A.P. Harcombe. (editors). 1990. The vertebrates of British Columbia: scientific and English Names. B.C. Min. of Municipal Affairs, Recreation and Culture, and B.C. Min. Environ., Victoria, B.C. Royal British Columbia Museum Heritage Record No. 20; Wildlife Report No. R24.
- Inventory Branch. 1993. Growth and yield: establishment of permanent growth samples in natural stands. B.C. Min. For., Victoria, B.C. Forest Inventory Manual.
- Green, R., R.L. Trowbridge, and K. Klinka. 1993. Towards a taxonomic classification of humus forms. Supplement to Forest Science, Vol. 39, No. 1, Feb. 1993. Washington, D.C.
- Hamilton, E. 1988. A system for the classification of seral ecosystems within the Biogeoclimatic Ecosystem Classification system. First approximation. B.C. Min. For. and Lands, Victoria, B.C. Research Report RR87004-HQ.
- Howes, D.E. and E. Kenk. 1997. Terrain classification system for British Columbia. Version 2. B.C. Min. Env., Lands and Parks, MOE Manual 10, Victoria, B.C.
- Luttmerding, H.A., D.A. Demarchi, E.C. Lea, D.V. Meidinger, and T. Vold. (editors). 1990. Describing ecosystems in the field. Second edition. B.C. Min. Env., Lands and Parks and B.C. Min. of For., MOE Manual 11. Victoria, B.C.
- Meidinger, D., T. Lee, G.W. Douglas, G. Britton, W. MacKenzie, and H. Qian. 1998. British Columbia plant species codes and selected attributes. B.C. Min. For., Victoria, B.C. Research Br. Database.
- Oliver, C.D., and B.C. Larson, 1990. Forest stand dynamics. McGraw-Hill, New York, N.Y.

- Resources Inventory Branch, 1997. Vegetation resources inventory: sampling procedures. B.C. Min. For., Victoria, B.C.
- Resources Inventory Committee. 1998. British Columbia Wildlife Habitat Ratings Standards. Review Draft. Wildlife Interpretations Subcommittee. Victoria, B.C.
- Resources Inventory Committee. 1997 (in prep). Procedures for wildlife capability and suitability mapping in British Columbia. Review Draft. Wildlife Interpretations Subcommittee. Victoria, B.C.
- Resources Inventory Committee: Elements Working Group. 1996. Standardized inventory methodologies for components of British Columbia's biodiversity. Prov. of B.C., Victoria, B.C.
- Resources Inventory Committee: Terrestrial Ecosystems Group. Standards for wildlife habitat capability and suitability ratings in British Columbia. Prov. of B.C., Victoria, B.C.
- Resources Inventory Committee: Vegetation Inventory Working Group.
 1995. The British Columbia Land Cover Classification: background and definitions, a working document. Prov. B.C., Victoria,
 B.C.
- VENUS. 1998. VENUS 3.0: Vegetation and Environment data NexUS, dataentry, reporting and analysis tool, version 3. B.C. Min. Environ. and B.C. Min. of For., Victoria, B.C.
- Weetman, G.F., E. Ponozzo, M. Jull, and K. Marek. 1990. An assessment of opportunities for alternative silvicultural systems in the SBS, ICH, and ESSF biogeoclimatic zones of the Prince Rupert Forest Region. B.C. Min. For., Smithers, B.C. Contract Report.

® con	RITISH LUMBIA			G	ROUN	D INSF	PECTI	ON	For	RM	
G □ vs	v 🗆	Рнотс)			X:	Y:	DATE			
PROJECT	lo.					SURV.					
MAP SHE	ET					PLOT #			Poly.	.#	
UTM ZON	ΙE			Lat. / No			Long.	/ East			
ASPECT					ď	ELEVATION	ON				m
SLOPE		%	6	SMR			SNR				
Meso Slope Postion		_	Cre Up	est per slope] Midslop] Lowers] Toe		☐ De	oressio vel	on	
DRAINAGE MINERAL	-			ry rapidly pidly	Ē	Well Mod. we Imperfe	ell [□ Pod	orly y poor	ly	
MOISTURE SUBCLASS ORGANIC	SES -	_		ueous raquic	_] Aquic] Subaqu		☐ Pei ☐ Hui	humid mid		
MINERAL TEXTURE				dy (LS,S) ny (SL,L,) SCL,FSL		Silty (S			C,SiC,C)	
	Soil Tex	TURE	/les	ic 🗆	Humic	1	RGANIC 0-40 c		N THIC		
Humus F	orm Mor		/lod		Mull	Root R	ESTRICTI	NG LAY	ER Type		
COARSE I	FRAGMENT	Con < 20%			20–35%		35–70	% [] >7	0%	
TEF	RRAIN			cc	MPONE	NT: 1	ГC1 □	тс	2 🗌	ТС3 □	
TERRAIN TEXTURE				RFICIAL TERIAL		Surfaci Expres			GEON Proc	MORPH CESS	
1			1			1			1		
2			2			2			2		
ECOS	SYSTE	М		cc	MPONE	NT: E	EC1□	EC	2 🗆	EC3	
BGC Uni	-					Ecosec					
SITE SER						SITE MO	DDIFIERS				
STRUCTUI STAGE	RAL					CROWN CLOSUR	E				%
E(COSYS	TEM			N		TERRA S	AIN P		ON	
	%	SS	3	SM	ST		%		Clas	ssification	
EC1						TC1					
EC2						TC2					
EC3						TC3					

DO	MINA	NT / INI	DICA	OR	PLAI	NT S	PECI	ES				
Тота	L %	A:		B:			C:			D:		
L.	Sp	ECIES	%	L.	s	PECIES	;	%	L.	Spec	IES	%
				1								
				-								
				1								
				Сом	PLETE		Par	TIAL []			
Tre	e Men	suratio	n									
			\vdash			n to D			Ht. to		BH	Path
S	pp.	DBH	Тор	Bot	SD	SL	HD	HT	DBH	HT	Age	Y/N
NO	TFS (s	ite dia	gram	. exr	OSUI	re. al	evino	ı. etc	:_)			
	0 (0	ala	3. a.ii	, 0,	. 3 001	٠, gı	٠,١٤	,, σιο	-,			

¥		EC	osy	STE	ΜF	IELI	D FC	ORM			DATE A	/ M	1	D 	PLOT NO.				
COL	ITISH UMBIA			F FORE	STS	PROJ ID.	JECT								FIELD NO.	\$	SURVE	EYOR(S)	
					L	OCA	TION								SITE	E DI	4GR	AM	
	GENERAL LOCATION	l																	
	FOREST REGION		MAPSH	IEET		UTM ZONE		LAT./ NORTH.		LONG									
TION	AIRPHOTO NO.)		X	CO-ORI	Э.	Y CO-	ORD.	MAP UNIT										
Ē		SITE INFORMATION																	
RIP	PLOT REPRESEN	NTING																	
DESC	BGC UNIT			SITE SERI	ES			TRANS./ DISTRIB.	ECOSECTION										
Ö	MOISTURE REGIME										REALM/ CLASS							PHOTO ROLL	
E	ELEV.	m.	SLOPE		AS	PECT	o	MESO SL POS.	OPE	SURFA TOPOC					EXPOS. FRAME NOS.				
S						NOT	ΓES								SUB	STR	ATE	(%)	
															ORG. MATTER		ROC	KS	
															DEC. WOOD MINERAL SOIL				
													BEDROCK		WAT	ER			

FS882 (1) HRE 98/5

FS882 (3) HRE 98/5 :S3TON +1 1 **VEGETATION** 1 1 % ABYAJ ADDITIONAL SPECIES 1 - 1SHRUBS 81 82 8 1 - 11 1 WOSS / FICHEN / SEEDFING (D) НЕВВ ГАХЕВ (С) 8 28 18 A EA LA 1A **S**BBRT LIST PART.
BY LAYER ON. PLOT byge of % COΛEK LKEE (∀) SHKNB (B) HEKB (C) WOSS \ ΓΙCHEN (D) SNK\E\AOK(S)

	GEOLO	GY E	BEDROCK	<u> </u>	1		C. F. LI	ГН.	1	1	;	SURVEYOR	R(S)			PLOT	NO.
	TERRA	IN T	EXTURE 1 L				FICIAL 1	1		SURF	ACE 1			GEOMORPH. 1			PROFILE DIAGRAM
	SOIL CL	ASS.	-			ним	US FOR	М				HYDROG	EO.		İ		
	ROOTIN	G DEPT	Н с	m RO		TYI	PE			WATE	ER SOL	JRCE	ı	DRAINAGE	•		
	R.Z. PA	RT. SIZE		LAY	STRIC ER		PTH		cm	SEE	PAGE		cm I	FLOOD RG.			
		NIC HO	RIZONS/LAYE														_
z	HOR/ LAYER	DEPTH	FABR STRUCTURE	vPOS	Ħ ^M	YCEL. AB.	FECAL AB.	AB.	OTS SIZE	pH	COMN	MENTS (cons	sistenc	y, character, fa	auna, etc):		_
SCRIPTION																	
I⊑																	
S																	_
																	_
		AL HO	RIZONS/LAYE	RS		0/ 0/						OTRUGE					
SOIL	HOR/ LAYER	DEPTH	COLOUR	ASP. TE	XT.	G (DARSE I	TOTAL		AB.	OOTS SIZE	STRUCT CLASS K	KIND	СОММ	ENTS (mo	ttles, cl	ay films, effervesc., etc):
၂																	
	NOTES:		•											•			

FS882 (2) HRE 98/5

FS 882 (4) HRE 98/5

						\perp																			
						_																			
	\perp					\perp								\perp											2
		0		,, -,		+							7711	+											MENSURATION
DBH		SPP		# 3:		<u> </u>	BH			SPP		# =	TREE						SETC	\NI					S
			<u> </u>	AT (ובם	L3W	VIC	J 3:	191				l						2310	/IN			I	Н	고
																									自
																									2
																								Ш	
																								Ш	
	.v=c	TYPE	_	70	7	-71	_		<u>B</u>				∃Ð∀	TН	DBH	TH.	au.	"TS	as	TOB	101			닠	
SITE	-		D. OR B.	R. BRAN.	MISTLE.	F. CRACK	F. OR C.	SCAR.	BL.CONK	CONK	ans	IS		JATOT TH	OT	TH	HD		HT CAL		qOT	рвн	SPP	TREE#	
	∃9∀	MAG				×			 EAOĿ		3				.TH	IVI.				ENS	ΙΛΙ				



	Proj. id.										Date	у	1	m I	d I	N	-hab.	type					page	of
	Plot no.	1 1	1 1			Surv	eyor				•					fe	ature	dst.						
	Sį	pecies	Hab use	/Ssn		Plot	type							Plot-i	n-con	text								
	5-le	etter code	Sp. L.R.	Ssn.	FD	SH	тн	Com.	Habitat feature	Conf.	Distance (km)	F/C L.R.	lmp.	Habitat feature	Conf.	Dista (kn		F/C L.R.	lmp.	FD	SH	тн	Suit.	Com.
5			1						_								1							
面			+ -														1						_	
ASSESSMENT			-								•					•	1							
SS																·	_					\Box	\dashv	П
몽			i						i								i							
SS			1														1							Ш
			+ +								• 1					•								
Α																•	_							П
HABITAT			i														i							
AE	I 1		1						- 1					- 1		•	ı						\blacksquare	
			+ +								•					•	1					\vdash	\dashv	\vdash
쁘																<u> </u>	+							
Ž																	1							
19			+																			\vdash	\dashv	
WILDLIFE																	-							
	Comme	ents / Notes									• '					•	1							\neg

FS 882 (5) HRE 98/5

Š	*	BRITISH COLUMBIA
7		COLUMBIA

Project ic	id.										Plot	no.								
Evide	ence of Use			Inside	plot			Outside plot and inside ecosystem unit												
	Species	S	ex Life Stage	Activity	Des.	No.	Com.		Life Stage	Activity	Des.	No.	Sex	Life Stage	Act	Activity	Des.	No.	Cor	
	1 1			1						ı						ı				
\vdash										- 1						L			L	
┝┷		-		-															-	
┝╌		-		-												1			╁	
 																			t	
		-																	t	
																			_	
Comm	nents / Notes	to d Too	A 44 miles -	f \A/	:1-11:4-			Cimn	la Ca	ara a Ma	dy Do	hrio	Sa	mnled			m of 3	n tr	ane	
Comm		ited Tree	Attribu	tes for W	ildlife			Simp	le Co	arseWo	ody De	bris	Sa	mpled	7	8	m of 3	80 m tra	ans	
Comm B.A.F.		ated Tree	Attribu		ildlife n DBH			Simp Decay of	Piece #	arseWoo	ody De	bris 4	Sa 5	mpled	7	8	m of 3	80 m tra		
	Abbrevia			Mi			I.	Decay of	class	1 2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10		
B.A.F.	Abbrevia	Area	d	Mi	n DBH			Decay of	class	arseWoo	ody De	bris 4	\$6 5	mpled 6	7	8	m of 3			
B.A.F.	Abbrevia	Area No. dea	d	Mi N	n DBH			Decay of Diam. of	class class class Piece #	1 2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10		
B.A.F. No. of tree Avg. DB	Abbrevia	Area No. dea	d	Mi N	n DBH		<u> </u>	Decay of Decay of Decay of	class class class class class class class	1 2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10		
B.A.F. No. of tree Avg. DB	Abbrevia	Area No. dea	Avg	Mi N	n DBH o. live		<u> </u>	Diam. o	class class class class class class class	1 2	3	4	5	6	7 7	8	9	10		
B.A.F. No. of tree Avg. DB	Abbrevia	Area No. dea	Avg	Mi N length (m)	n DBH o. live	Cap.		Diam. o	class class class class class class class class	1 2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10		
B.A.F. No. of tree Avg. DB	Abbrevia	Area No. dea	Avg nents	Mi N length (m)	n DBH o. live	Сар.		Diam. o	class class class class class class class class	1 2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10		
B.A.F. No. of tree Avg. DB	Abbrevia	Area No. dea	Avg nents	Mi N length (m)	n DBH o. live	Cap.		Diam. o	class class class class class class class class	1 2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10		
B.A.F. No. of tree Avg. DB	Abbrevia	Area No. dea	Avg nents	Mi N length (m)	n DBH o. live	Cap.		Diam. o	class class class class class class class class	1 2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10		

FS 882 (5) HRE 98/5



			JMBIA	_							_																			
	F	Proj	ject id.								F	lot no.	l 1	- 1		1	ı	-	ı		ı	Sı	ırveyor							
	В.,		(m²/ha)			ı			Plot s	size (n	1²)	1		Mini	mur	n DBH		- 1					Date y		m	ı		d	1	
	_			al l					_		L	ength.		ğ (-	s	Height to		Wi	ldli	fe (Coc			С	om	men	its			
	Tre No	ee	Species	¥	DB	H (cr	m)	'n	Rem.	Тор	Bot		Slope Distance	불투	as	live	ä	₹	~	٥	en	ife								_
١	146	J.	Species	Stan				MorE	Bark (%)	(%)	(%)	pos (m)	Distance (m)	Estimated length (m)	5	crown (m)	Appear	Crown	Bar	Wood	Lichen	Wildlife use								
빞	0	1	1 1		_					-	_																			
	0	2	1 1			_																								
Ы	0	3																												
MIL	0	4	1 1							_																				
	0	5				· ·			i														1							
FOR	0	6							1			T.			Т															
0	0	7					•																1							
		8					•					-	- ·		T								i i							
လ္မ	0	9																					1							
I۳	1	0					•		<u> </u>			•																		
\supset	1	1					•					•			T															
<u> </u>	1	2					•					T .											i i							
ATTRIBUTE	1	3					•					1											1							_
IE.	1	4																					1							
_	1	5																					1							
Щ	1	6	1 1									Ι.			T															
	1	7			Γ.		•					T •	i . •										i i							
TRE	1	8					•					•																		
	1	9					•					T:	l . •		T		П						1							_
	2	-					•					+ •			t		Н				\vdash		1							_
	_	Ĭ		1			•					<u> </u>						ш					•							—

FS 882 (6) HRE 98/5

(_Br Coll	itish Jmbia														Date y		1	m	1	d	
	Proje	ect id.	ct id. Plot no.														or					
Γ				Tran	sect	t #1					-	Tra	nsect	#2						ndTyp		
		Azimutl	ո		(0–3	59)	Sampled		of 24 m	Azimut	uth		-359)	Sampled		of 24 m		(in plot	boun	daries	.)
	Tree No.	Species	Diame (cm	ter)		Tilt ngle	Length (m)	Height of end (cm)	Angle grnd.	Species	Diameter (cm)	Class	Tilt Angle	Length (m)	Height of end (cm)	Angle grnd.	Pile#	Size length	of pile width	e (m) height	Diam (cm)	Inte spa
	0 1					_	•				1 1 .						1					
	0 2	1 1	1 1	.	┸	ı.		1 1	1 1	1 1	11.			١.	1 1	1 1	2					┖
	0 3				┸	1						L					3					┖
{ L	0 4			.		ı			1 1			L		<u> </u>			4					L
: L	0 5	1 1	1.1		┸	_	١.	1 1	1 1	1 1	11.	L			1.1	1.1	5					L
5 L	0 6					ı			1 1			L					6					L
- L	0 7	1 1			┸	_		1 1	1 1	1 1		L			1.1	1 1	7					L
ן נ	0 8			.	┸	_						L	<u> </u>				8					
	0 9			.		1						L		<u> </u>		1 1	Co	mme	nts			
![1 0		1.1			ī				1 1	-		1		1 1	_						
	1 1		1.1	.		1			1 1					١		1 1						
3 [1 2		1 1	.				1 1	1 1	1 1			l ,	١.,	1 1	1.1						
	1 3				Ι									L .								
	1 4			.]																		
	1 5		1 1				_		1 1	1 1					1 1							
'[1 6		1 1	.]										l		1						
	1 7				\perp							Ĺ					Ĺ					
	1 8			\Box	Τ									L .								
Ī	1 9		1 1				1.		1 1		1 1 4	Г		l		1 1						
Ī	2 0											Г	Τ.									

FS 882 (7) HRE 98/5